

MINISTERING SPIRITS...

THE ANGELS OF GOD

*Are not the angels all ministering spirits (servants) sent out in the service [of
God for the assistance] of those who are to inherit salvation?
(Hebrews 1:14, TAB)*

© *Harvestime International Network*
<http://www.harvestime.org>

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction		3
Objectives		4
Chapter One:	Introducing The Angels	5
Chapter Two:	Dispelling Misconceptions	12
Chapter Three	The Characteristics And Titles Of Angels	22
Chapter Four:	The Organization Of Angels	38
Chapter Five:	Angels In The Old Testament	46
Chapter Six:	The Angel Of The Lord	66
Chapter Seven:	Angels In The Life Of Jesus	81
Chapter Eight:	Angels In The Book Of Acts	91
Chapter Nine:	Angels In The Epistles	98
Chapter Ten:	Angels In The Revelation: Part One: Their Work	106
Chapter Eleven:	Angels In The Revelation: Part Two: Their Worship	126
Chapter Twelve:	Angels On Assignment: Part One: Ministry To Believers	137
Chapter Thirteen:	Angels On Assignment: Part Two: Guardian Angels	144
Chapter Fourteen:	Angels On Assignment: Part Three: Angels And Spiritual Warfare	152
Chapter Fifteen:	Activating The Angels	164
Epilogue	A Great Cloud Of Witnesses	172
Appendix One:	Difficult Passages Regarding Angels	173
Appendix Two:	A Comparison Of Angels And Believers	176
Appendix Three:	Satan And The Evil Angels	178
Appendix Four:	Biblical References	188
Answers To Self-Tests		219

INTRODUCTION

The study of angels is referred to as “angelology”. The term comes from two Greek terms, *aggelos* meaning “messenger” or “angel” and *logos* meaning “word, matter, or thing.” In Christian theology the term “angelology” refers to the study of the Biblical doctrine of angels.

The subject of this manual is the righteous angels of God. It explains their origin, organization, and attributes. It summarizes the ministry of angels in the past, present, and future as recorded in the Bible. It also dispels common misconceptions about angels.

Traditionally, “angelology” includes the study of evil angels who are under the control of Satan. Their devices are an important subject of which we should be knowledgeable, “*Lest Satan should get an advantage of us*” (2 Corinthians 2:11). Harvestime provides detailed teaching on this topic in a course called “*Spiritual Strategies: A Manual Of Spiritual Warfare*” available free at <http://www.harvestime.org>. An overview of Satan and the evil angels is provided in Appendix Three of this manual.

There is great interest in angels today and there are many accounts of “angelic experiences” because people are fascinated by the supernatural. As Believers, we cannot allow experience or the world to define this subject for us. While we do not want to get caught up in “angel-mania”, neither do we want to ignore the vital ministry of God’s angels.

We cannot look to science, secular education, or artistic renditions to dispense truth on this subject. The Bible will be our source for analysis, as it is the Word of God inspired by the Holy Spirit. The Bible proves the existence of angels, describes them, and defines their ministries.

Why study angels? We are not seeking the accumulation of information, but divine revelation. As Believers, we must be able to separate truth from error. The false religions of Islam and Mormonism were both founded when an “angel of light” appeared with a message that they claimed was from God. It is also important to understand the ministries of these supernatural spirits which are dispatched by God in your behalf. You should know their purposes and how they are activated in your life and ministry.

You are not alone in the battles of life. You are surrounded by a great host of angels. Don’t you think it is time to get to know them?

“Therefore, whatever is said concerning the ministry of angels, let us direct it to this end that, overcoming all diffidence, our hope in God may be more firmly established.”
-John Calvin

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this study you will be able to:

- Define the word "angel".
- Explain the origin of angels.
- State the major purposes for which angels were created.
- Discuss the fall of some of the angels.
- Dispel misconceptions about angels.
- Discuss the characteristics of angels.
- List the Biblical titles of angels.
- Explain the organization of angels.
- Summarize the ministry of angels in the Old Testament.
- Explain the ministry of the Angel of the Lord.
- Summarize the ministry of angels in the life of Jesus.
- Summarize the ministry of angels in the book of Acts.
- Summarize the ministry of angels in the Epistles.
- Summarize the ministry of angels in the book of Revelation.
- Discuss how angels worship and apply it to your own worship.
- Explain the ministry of angels to Believers.
- Discuss the ministry of guardian angels.
- Explain how angels function in spiritual warfare.
- Explain how angels are activated and hindered.

CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCING THE ANGELS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Define the word "angel".
- Explain the origin of angels.
- State the purposes for which angels were originally created.
- Identify the home of angels.
- Discuss the number of angels.
- Identify the spheres of activity of angels.
- Discuss the spiritual divisions of angels and how it occurred.

KEY VERSE:

By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. (Psalm 33:6)

INTRODUCTION

Who are these mysterious creatures that adorn our décor, stir our imaginations, and are featured in artistic renditions? How were they created? What is their purpose? The Bible has much to say about angels, records many stories of men and women who encountered them, and reveals that they have a divine purpose in the lives of Believers. So let's begin our exploration of this fascinating subject from a Scriptural perspective.

THE DEFINITION OF ANGEL

The title "angel" means messenger. So by definition, an angel is a messenger. The Bible has over three hundred references to angels, and defines two groups of angelic messengers. The good angels carry out the commands of God, while evil angels carry out Satan's deceitful and evil commands.

THE ORIGIN OF ANGELS

Angels did not evolve, nor were they formerly men. Angels were created by God at His command:

Praise ye Him, all His angels: praise ye Him, all His hosts...Let them praise the name of the Lord: For He commanded and they were created. (Psalms 148:2 and 5)

The “invisible things” in heaven and the “hosts” referred to in the following Scriptures include angels.

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee. (Nehemiah 9:6)

By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. (Psalm 33:6)

We also are told by Scripture that angels were present when God laid the foundations of the earth and they rejoiced to witness His creative work:

Where were you when I created the earth? Tell me, since you know so much! Who decided on its size? Certainly you'll know that! Who came up with the blueprints and measurements? How was its foundation poured, and who set the cornerstone, While the morning stars sang in chorus and all the angels shouted praise? (Job 38:4-7, MSG)

The Bible is not clear on the exact time when God created angels, but we do know that the angels rejoiced as He created the earth and that by the sixth day of creation, *"the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them"* (Genesis 2:1).

THE PURPOSES OF ANGELS

Angels have many purposes, as you will learn in this study, but all of their ministries fall under two major categories: Their worship of God and their work for God.

Angels were originally created to worship the Trinity of God. You will learn more about angelic worship in Chapter Eleven of this manual.

Angels were also created to carry out God's assignments. Their Biblical mandate is to...

Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word. (Psalm 103:20)

The Lord *"makes his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire"* (Psalm 104:4).

The angels are *"all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation"* (Hebrews 1:14). Angels are dispatched from the throne room of God to minister to Believers who are the heirs of salvation. If you are a true Believer, then that includes you!

It is through Jesus Christ that angels ascend and descend to and from Heaven to do God's bidding. Jacob first saw this in a vision (Genesis 28:12) which was later explained by Jesus:

And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man. (John 1:51)

In summary, angels were created for the purposes of worshipping God and working for Him by fulfilling specific assignments. You will learn more about their specific ministries as you progress in this study.

THE HOME OF ANGELS

Heaven is the home of the good angels of God. We see them present there continuously in the scenes described in the book of Revelation. Isaiah and Ezekiel also describe them as being present in God's throne room. Jesus said that the angels... *"do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven"* (Matthew 18:10). Although they live in Heaven, angels are continuously active and present on earth.

THE NUMBER OF ANGELS

Angels can appear in any number: One (Luke 1:26-29); two (John 20:12; Acts 1:210); three (Genesis 18:1-2); and as a multitude (Luke 2:13).

The Bible gives no definite figures, but we know that there is a fixed number of angels created by God, as angels do not reproduce and they do not die (Matthew 22:28-30). According to the Bible, the angels are:

-Thousands of thousands.

A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened. (Daniel 7:10)

The chariots of God are twenty thousand, even thousands of angels: the Lord is among them, as in Sinai, in the holy place. (Psalm 68:17)

And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands. (Revelation 5:11)

-Legions.

Jesus said that He could call twelve legions of angels to His assistance if He desired to do so (Matthew 26:53). A legion was a military term in the Roman army for a group of at least 6,000 soldiers. When Jesus said 12 legions would be sent at His request, that is 72,000 angels!

-Multitudes.

*And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying, Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.
(Luke 2:13-14)*

This was a multitude of the heavenly host, not the whole host.

-Hosts.

Psalm 46:7 indicates that God has hosts of angels. In the Old Testament Jesus is repeatedly called the Lord of Hosts.

Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee. (Nehemiah 9:6)

The Word of God declares:

*As the host of heaven cannot be numbered, neither the sand of the sea measured: so will I multiply the seed of David my servant, and the Levites that minister unto me.
(Jeremiah 33:22)*

-Innumerable.

But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels. (Hebrews 12:22)

God named the stars (Psalm 147:4). He knows each of His angels by name. He also knows your name and the number of hairs on your head (Matthew 10:30). If each person on earth has a guardian angel, then that increases the innumerable host even more.

One thing for sure: When confronting spiritual enemies, we can be assured that “*They that be with us are more than they that be with them*” (2 Kings 6:16). And as Job questions, “*Who is able to number his hosts of angels?*” (Job 25:3).

THE SPHERES OF ACTIVITY OF ANGELS

The spheres of activity of angels refers to the territories in which they function. The book of Revelation confirms that angels are active in their dwelling place in Heaven (Matthew 22:30). Angels are also active on earth, but there is no Biblical record of them taking up permanent residence on earth. They apparently travel between Heaven and earth (Genesis 28:12 and John 1:51).

THE SPIRITUAL DIVISION OF ANGELS

Angels fall into two spiritual categories: **Holy and elect** (Mark 8:38; 1 Timothy 5:21) or **evil and unclean spirits** (Luke 8:2; 11:24,26). They are either **the angels of God** (John 1:51) or **Satan’s angels** (Matthew 25:41). So how did this spiritual chasm occur?

God does not create evil. Satan, the enemy of our souls, was a perfect angel when he was originally created by God, but he was given a free will to choose good or evil:

Thou was perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created till iniquity was found in thee. (Ezekiel 28:15)

The Bible describes Satan’s rebellion against God in Isaiah 14:12-15. When Satan sinned, he did not sin alone. He took with him a portion of the angelic host of Heaven who participated in his rebellion against God. Satan and the rebellious angels were cast out of Heaven. They were no longer good spiritual beings (angels), but became evil beings referred to as demons:

And there was war in Heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon (Satan); and the dragon fought and his angels. And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in Heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. (Revelation 12:7-9)

Satan and the fallen angels are responsible for many of the myths and deceptions regarding angels. More about that in the next chapter.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Define the word "angel".

3. According to the following verses, when were angels created and by whom?

-Psalms 148:2 and 5
-Colossians 1:16
-Nehemiah 9:6)
-Psalm 33:6)
-Job 38:4-7

4. State the purposes for which angels were originally created.

5. Where is the home of angels?

6. Using the following references, summarize what you learn about the number of angels.

- Daniel 7:10
- Psalm 68:17
- Revelation 5:11
- Matthew 26:53
- Luke 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 9:6
- Jeremiah 33:22
- Hebrews 12:22

7. What are the spheres of activity of angels?

8. What are the spiritual divisions of angels and how did it occur?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER TWO

DISPELLING MISCONCEPTIONS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Dispel common misconceptions about angels.
- List guidelines that will dispel misconceptions about angels.
- Identify the Biblical standard for judging whether or not an angel is from God.

KEY VERSE:

*And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.
(2 Corinthians 11:14)*

INTRODUCTION

People have been intrigued by angels for thousands of years because of interest in the supernatural. The idea of invisible beings who make things happen behind the scenes has resulted in many stories, movies, and works of art.

Many of the ideas that we have accepted about angels have come from man's imaginations. Some are fantasies, some misconceptions, and others deliberate deceptions. The prevailing secular view of angels and the misconceptions surrounding them has hindered many from studying them from a Scriptural viewpoint. As Believers, we should not neglect the subject, but we cannot allow the world to define angels for us.

The Bible reveals much about angels, but there is also much we do not know. We must be careful to accept only what God's Word reveals regarding these amazing spiritual beings. Before commencing to study what the Scriptures says about angels, we need to dispel some deceptions regarding them. That is the purpose of this chapter.

COMMON MISCONCEPTIONS

Here are some common misconceptions regarding angels.

-Angels do not exist. Some people claim angels do not exist, but the Bible provides ample proof of their existence and spiritual functions. Angels are mentioned 108 times in the Old Testament and 187 times in the New Testament.

The Bible confirms their existence and states:

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him: And he is before all things, and by him all things consist. (Colossians 1:16-17)

According to the Biblical record, angels exist and were created by God.

“The denial of the existence of angels springs from the materialistic and unbelieving spirit, which in its most terrible form denies the existence of God.” Merrill Unger

-Angels are flesh and blood. The Bible reveals that angels are not flesh and blood, but are spirits (Hebrews 1:14; 1 Corinthians 15:40). They can, however, take on the form of humans as when the angels visited Abraham (Genesis 18). In this form, they apparently can eat and drink and communicate as humans do.

-Angels look like they are portrayed in art. Angels are often depicted as cute cherubs or effeminate beings with long hair and wings. The idea comes from "Cupid", a Roman mythological god of love and it is not scriptural. Since angels do not marry or reproduce, there are no baby angels. What we do know about their appearance is that some angels are described as appearing in dazzling white clothing and blazing glory (Matthew 28:2-4; Acts 1:9-11). Angels may be present and yet unperceived (2 Kings 6:15-17). Some angels in the book of Revelation are described as being clothed in pure white linen with their breasts girded with golden girdles (Revelation 15:6). John also saw an angel clothed with a cloud, with a rainbow on his head, a face that looked like the sun, and feet like pillars of fire (Revelation 10:1). Some have the appearance of men, like those who came to visit Abraham and Sarah (Genesis 18). We are instructed: *“Do not forget to entertain strangers, for by so doing some have entertained angels unaware” (Hebrews 13:2)*--so you may have encountered an angel and not known it.

-Angels all have wings. The Bible reveals that some angels have wings--such as the cherubim and seraphim--but others appear as ordinary men without any wings (Genesis 18-19 and Hebrews 13:2.) An angel is seen flying through the midst of heaven in Revelation 8:13, but there is no validity to the belief that all angels have wings and/or that angels must earn their wings, as depicted in the popular movie *“It’s A Wonderful Life.”*

-Angels wear halos. This has often been depicted in art, but the Bible never mentions angels having halos. Actually, the halo is a symbol of the sun gods of ancient religions. The kings from Syria and Egypt wore halo-like crowns to symbolize their connection with these gods.

-Angels have the same attributes as God. This is not true, as angels are not self-existing (without origin). They are created beings. Angels are not omnipotent (all powerful); omnipresent (present everywhere); or omniscient (knowing everything)—all of which are attributes of God. In Psalm 103 David refers to angels as *“mighty ones who do his word.”* This provides evidence that angels are submissive to God and not all-powerful in themselves. Jesus

revealed that angels are not all-knowing when He spoke of the Day of the Lord, the timing of which angels are not aware (Matthew 24:36).

-Angels are passive beings. Because of how they have been portrayed by artists, angels are sometimes considered as passive beings who float around on clouds all day and play harps. But the Bible reveals many instances of angels serving as mighty warriors of God. See 2 Kings chapter 19 and Revelation 9:15 for examples. When an angel appeared to Daniel, he apparently wasn't a cute little Cherub, because Daniel fell prostrate and was terrified (Daniel 8:17). The angels at Christ's tomb terrified the Roman Soldiers (Matthew 28:2-4). Nowhere in the Bible do angels appear as sweet little spirits fluttering around.

-We should pray to angels. We pray to God through Jesus Christ (1 Timothy 2:5). Seeking communication with angels risks opening the door to demonic influences. God's angels communicate with mankind at the direction of the Lord. Nowhere are we told to pray to them or ask them to communicate with us. We are to pray to God the Father through Jesus Christ as empowered by the Holy Spirit. Angels are one-way messengers to us from God, not from us to God.

-We should seek guidance from angels. The Bible records many instances where angels guided people, but this was at the command of the Lord not because people sought guidance from them. You have a spiritual GPS system: The Bible and the Holy Spirit (John 16:13; Acts 16:6).

-Angels were once humans. Some people believe that humans become angels when they die. This idea was perpetrated by Joseph Smith, founder of the Mormon religion, but angels were created by God. Humans do not become angels when they die. If a person is a Believer, his soul and spirit go immediately into the presence of the Lord (2 Corinthians 5:1-5; Philippians 1:21-23). It is only the earthly shell of their body that is buried, eventually to be resurrected again to new life (Romans 8:11; Philippians 3:21). Peter speaks of the Gospel message which angels long to look into. If angels wish they could hear this message, then they were not once human or they would already have heard it. Hebrews 12:22-23 makes a distinction between the innumerable company of angels and the spirits of just men made perfect. Resurrected Believers will be like angels in that they will be immortal and no longer marry, but they won't be angels.

-Angels are both male and female. This myth has arisen from artistic renditions of both male and female angels. The Bible reveals, however, that angels are not human and so there is no such thing as sexual divisions among them. All angels throughout the Bible are referred to in the masculine sense with the exception of Zechariah 5:9 that may be a reference to a feminine angel. In the Bible, both male and female Believers are referred to as "sons of God" and "the Bride of Christ." So it is possible that angels may be both male and female in appearance, although they do not marry or reproduce.

-Angels can reproduce. The Bible states that angels do not marry, hence they cannot reproduce (Matthew 22:30).

-The angel of death has the power to take lives. There is no actual "angel of death". Angels were sent to cause death in events such as the Passover in Exodus 11:4-5 and the deaths of the Assyrians in 2 Kings 19:35, but there is no actual "angel of death" referred to in the Bible. The angels who cause death are just that: Angels carrying out God's orders, as He is the only one with the power of life and death (2 Timothy 1:10). The Bible does reveal, however, that angels escort Believers into the presence of the Lord at the time of death (Luke 16:22; 1 Corinthians 15:26).

-Angels can heal you. There is no direct reference to angels being involved in healing other than the angel who troubled the waters for healing at the pool of Bethesda. Scriptures do indicate that angels struck people with sickness, and as Roy Hicks comments: *"If angels can strike people with sickness as they did in the Old Testament when God's judgment was carried out, then why can't angels assist with healing of diseases?"* While this is possible, we need to walk in the Biblical knowledge of healing that is factual. The Scriptures reveal that Jesus provided the way for us to receive healing (Isaiah 53:5; Matthew 8:17; 1 Peter 2:24). The Holy Spirit provides the power for healing through spiritual gifts (1 Corinthians 12:4-11; Acts 10:38). Healing comes in answer to prayer and the laying on of hands (Mark 16:17; Hebrews 6:2; James 5:14-15). If angels are involved in healing, it is only to assist as they did at Bethesda.

-A message given by an angel is always from God. Not true! Satan appears as an angel of light, and fallen angels can appear as ministers of righteousness. Paul warned that Satan's evil apprentices show up in the form of false prophets and false apostles (2 Corinthians 11:13-15). They are deceivers, seducing people away from faith in Christ to the doctrines of devils (1 Timothy 4:1-2; 1 John 2:18-22). The fact we are warned against angels who preach another gospel (evil angels) means that there are true angels who preach the true gospel.

One of the greatest deceptions in the Bible is recorded in 1 Kings 13. It is the story of a prophet of God who was deceived by another prophet who claimed he had seen an angel. The message from this man was contrary to what God had given the first prophet, and it cost him his life.

-Angels are mediators between God and man. There is only one mediator, and that is Jesus Christ (1 Timothy 2:5).

-Angels no longer ministered after the coming of the Holy Spirit. Angels ministered after the coming of the Holy Spirit as clearly demonstrated in the book of Acts, the Epistles, and the Revelation as well as documented accounts of modern times.

-Angels are to be worshipped. Only God is to be worshipped (Exodus 20:3). Angels themselves refuse the worship of men (Revelation 19:10; 22:8-9). The Apostle Paul warned Believers in the Colossian church about their worship of angels (Colossians 2:18). The angels who desire worship are actually demonic angels that disguise themselves as angels of light (2 Corinthians 11:13-14). We can learn about the good angels, respect them, appreciate their ministries, and admire their example of worship, but we are not to worship them. As you will learn later in this study, angels are sometimes referred to as "stars". Just as stars in the natural world are not to be worshipped, neither are these "stars" in the spiritual world.

-Jesus is an angel. Jesus, as part of the Trinity of God, is creator of all things, including the angels (John 1:3; Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:2,10). Jesus is not an angel, but is worshipped by the angels (Hebrews 1:6; Revelation 5:13-14.; 19:10). We see Jesus on the throne and the angels gathered around it (Revelation 22:1-3; 514). Jesus has a name above all names--including the angels (Ephesians 1:20-21; Philippians 2:9-11; Hebrews 1:4,7,14).

Some people claim Jesus is Michael, the archangel, but Daniel 10:1 describes Michael as a chief prince, a high-ranking angel but not the ruler of all the angels. An archangel will announce the Lord's return, so Michael can't be Jesus. Also, in Jude 9 Michael refused to pronounce judgment on the devil, whereas the Lord judges him and his fallen angels as well as all other creatures (Matthew 25:31-33; Revelation 20:7-15).

Some religions would lead you to believe that Jesus is an “advanced angel,” perhaps even implying that Jesus is sort of a “good version” of the fallen angel Satan. This false belief has been circulating since the first century AD. The writer of the book of Hebrews took the time to refute this error in detail in Hebrews chapter 1. It is clear that Jesus is completely different from and superior to the angels. He did, however, appear as the Angel of the Lord in Old Testament times. More about that in Chapter Six.

DISPELLING DECEPTION

Here are some important guidelines that will dispel deceptions regarding angels:

- Does the angel perform acts contrary to the Bible?
- Does the angel draw attention to himself or to God?
- Does the message from the angel appeal to your pride and flatter you?
- Does the angel claim to be the spirit of a dead friend, family member, or ancestor?
- Does the angel accuse you and cause shame?
- Is the message from the angel unscriptural and anti-Christ?

...If so, reject the revelation. This is an “angel of light”, a deception of Satan (2 Corinthians 11:14).

The Biblical standard by which to judge whether or not an angel is truly communicating a message from God is analyzing what the angel has to say about Jesus Christ:

Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world. (1 John 4:1-3)

We are also told to *“Prove all things; hold fast that which is good” (1 Thessalonians 5:21-23)*.

We must be on guard and stay alert, *“lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices” (2 Corinthians 2:11)*. Our enemy especially seeks to beguile the children of God and catch them in his snare (1 Timothy 3:6-7; 2 Timothy 2:26). We must fill our hearts with the Word of God (Psalm 119:11) and walk in the Spirit (Galatians 5:16). We must also heed the warning to not give the enemy a foothold (territory) in our lives.

ARE YOU READY?

Now that you have been introduced to the angels and major misconceptions about them have been dispelled, you are ready to learn what they are really like and what this means to you as a Believer. The next chapter discusses the characteristics and titles of these amazing beings.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Discuss the Biblical truths that address the following misconceptions about angels.

-Angels do not exist

-Angels are flesh and blood.

-Angels look like they are portrayed in art.

-Angels all have wings.

-Angels wear halos.

-Angels have the same attributes as God.

-Angels are passive beings.

-We should pray to angels

-We should seek guidance from angels.

-Angels were once humans.

-Angels are both male and female.

-Angels can reproduce.

-The angel of death has the power to take lives.

-Angels can heal you.

-A message from an angel is always from God.

-Angels are mediators between God and man.

-Angels no longer ministered after the coming of the Holy Spirit.

-Angels are to be worshipped.

-Jesus is an angel.

3. List guidelines that will dispel deceptions and misconceptions about angels.

4. What is the Biblical standard for judging whether or not an angel is from God?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER THREE

THE CHARACTERISTICS AND TITLES OF ANGELS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Summarize the characteristics of angels as revealed in the Bible.
- List the Biblical titles of angels.

KEY VERSE:

But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.
(1 Corinthians 2:4)

INTRODUCTION

A characteristic is an attribute or an inherent part of someone. A title describes someone's position. Studying the characteristics and titles of angels as revealed in the Bible provides foundational knowledge of these wonderful servants of God.

CHARACTERISTICS OF ANGELS

-Angels are invisible spirit beings.

Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation? (Hebrews 1:14)

Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire...(Psalm 104:4)

-Angels are radiant from being in God's presence.

And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid. (Luke 2:9)

The glory of the Lord makes angels radiant. They reflect His glory, not their own. Their radiance is majestic and awe inspiring, as described by Isaiah (Isaiah 6); Ezekiel (Ezekiel 1); Daniel (Daniel 7 and 9); and John (Revelation 1).

-Angels are awesome in appearance.

And, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow...(Matthew 28:2-3)

And entering into the sepulchre, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white garment; and they were affrighted. (Mark 16:5)

Their appearance is sometimes associated with fire:

Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire...(Psalm 104:4)

And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, in flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ...(2 Thessalonians 1:7-8)

-Angels can assume human form.

Angels can assume human form on occasion, their form depending on the function of their mission. Abraham and Lot both had angels visit them in the form of humans. They talked and dined with them (Genesis 18:2-8 and 19:1-22). We are advised to entertain strangers, for some have entertained angels without knowing it (Hebrews 13:2).

-Angels appear in supernatural ways.

Both the Old and New Testaments repeatedly confirm that angels also appear in dreams and visions. It is only through spiritual perception that you can see them because...

*...the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.
(1 Corinthians 2:14)*

Without spiritual perception, one will be like Balaam who did not see the angel in the pathway (Numbers 22) and Gehazi who did not see the angel army surrounding him and the prophet (1 Kings 6).

-Angels are sexless and do not procreate.

Although they are spoken of in the Bible in a masculine gender, angels are sexless.

And Jesus answering said unto them, The children of this world marry, and are given in marriage: But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage...(Luke 20:34-35)

-Angels are immortal.

Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection. (Luke 20:36)

-Angels are truthful.

And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. (Revelation 22:6)

-Angels are faithful.

Despite Israel's unfaithfulness during their wilderness journey, the angel with them remained faithful:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. (Isaiah 63:9)

-Angels have emotions.

They express joy:

Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth. (Luke 15:10)

They express desire:

Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you: Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow. Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into. (1 Peter 1:10-12)

-Angels are elect.

The angels that are elect are those who God foreknew would love and serve Him instead of joining in Satan's rebellion:

I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality. (1 Timothy 5:21)

-Angels observe us.

They observe the Church:

To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God...(Ephesians 3:10)

They witness the salvation of sinners:

Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth. (Luke 15:10)

The fact that angels rejoice over our salvation confirms that they observe us and are concerned about our spiritual condition before God.

-Angels have a will.

Like men, angels were originally created by God with a free will. Satan, who was originally an angel, sinned because of his own choice. He repeatedly declared, "I will..." (Isaiah 14). Other angels, exercising their own power of choice, joined Satan in his rebellion. Jude speaks of them in verse 6: *"And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day."*

There is no evidence that angels continued to sin after Satan's fall in which he drew one third of the angels with him. It is possible that the angels were confirmed in their position through this experience, just as Believers will be confirmed in a sinless state in eternity.

-Angels have appetites.

Abraham's angelic visitors dined with him:

And the Lord appeared unto him in the plains of Mamre: and he sat in the tent door in the heat of the day; And he lift up his eyes and looked, and, lo, three men stood by him: and when he saw them, he ran to meet them from the tent door, and bowed himself toward the ground, And said, My Lord, if now I have found favour in thy sight, pass not away, I pray thee, from thy servant: Let a little water, I pray you, be fetched, and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree: And I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort ye your hearts; after that ye shall pass on: for therefore are ye come to your servant. And they said, So do, as thou hast said. And Abraham hastened into the tent unto Sarah, and said, Make ready quickly three measures of fine meal, knead it, and make cakes upon the hearth. And Abraham ran unto the herd, and fetcht a calf tender and good, and gave it unto a young man; and he hasted to dress it. And he took butter, and milk, and the calf which he had dressed, and set it before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat. (Genesis 18:1-8)

The Bible also states that the Israelites ate angel's food (manna) during their wilderness (Psalm 78:25).

-Angels are intelligent.

Angels possess intelligence that is superior to that of humans. They know by revelation God's plan for the world:

And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication. (Revelation 17:1-2)

And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, And sware by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be time no longer... (Revelation 10:5-6)

-Angels function under authority.

They do not exceed their God-given authority. The archangel Michael did not rail against Satan, but said instead "*The Lord rebuke thee.*" (Jude 9).

-Angels are communicative.

The Bible is filled with the accounts of angels speaking, interpreting, informing, warning, and comforting people. They are God's communicators to the heirs of salvation.

Angels speak a heavenly language:

Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal. (1 Corinthians 13:1)

Job speaks of the "stars" and "sons of God" (angels) singing and shouting at the time of creation:

When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy? (Job 38:7)

The book of Revelation describes an angel preaching the Gospel:

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, (Revelation 14:6)

-Angels are innumerable.

The Bible gives no definite figures, but we know that there is a fixed number of angels created by God as they do not reproduce and they do not die (Matthew 22:28-30). According to the Bible, there are thousands of thousands of angels:

A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened. (Daniel 7:10)

The chariots of God are twenty thousand, even thousands of angels: the Lord is among them, as in Sinai, in the holy place. (Psalm 68:17)

And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands. (Revelation 5:11)

Jesus said that He could call twelve legions of angels to His assistance if He desired to do so (Matthew 26:53). A legion was a military term in the Roman army for a group of at least 6,000 soldiers. When Jesus said 12 legions would be sent at His request, that is 72,000 angels!

Angels are described as multitudes:

And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying, Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men. (Luke 2:13-14)

This was a multitude of the heavenly host that appeared, not the whole host. The Word of God declares:

As the host of heaven cannot be numbered, neither the sand of the sea measured: so will I multiply the seed of David my servant, and the Levites that minister unto me. (Jeremiah 33:22)

Angels are described as innumerable:

But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels.. (Hebrews 12:22)

-Angels are obedient.

Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word. (Psalms 103:20)

-Angels are holy.

The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb...(Revelation 14:10)

Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels. (Mark 8:38)

When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory...(Matthew 25:31)

-Angels are reverent.

They fear God and worship Him:

Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee. (Nehemiah 9:6)

Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. (Philippians 2:9-11)

And again, when he bringeth in the first begotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him. (Hebrews 1:6)

You will learn about the ministry of angels in worship in Chapter Eleven.

-Angels are strong, powerful, and mighty.

The strength, power, and might of angels are granted and governed by God, derived from Him and limited by Him.

Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word. (Psalm 103:20)

And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying, Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all. (Revelation 18:21)

And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory. (Revelation 18:1)

And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire. (Revelation 10:2)

Angels are stronger than man, powerful but not omnipotent (all powerful). For example, the angel Gabriel needed an assist from the angel Michael (Daniel 10:13).

-Angels are not limited by an earthly body.

They can move instantly through space:

Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. (Daniel 9:21)

Angels ascend and descend to and from heaven:

And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it. (Genesis 28:12)

They do not need rest:

And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. (Revelation 4:8)

Some angels have wings and fly, as the seraphim (Isaiah 6:2,6); the cherubim (Ezekiel 1:5-8); and Gabriel (Daniel 9:21):

And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound! (Revelation 8:13)

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, (Revelation 14:6)

-Angels direct attention to Jesus Christ.

When Mary Magdalene came to the tomb, saw the stone rolled away, and conversed with the angels, she was excited about the resurrection of Jesus, not because she had seen an angel:

But Mary stood without at the sepulchre weeping: and as she wept, she stooped down, and looked into the sepulchre, And seeth two angels in white sitting, the one at the head,

and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. And they say unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? She saith unto them, Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him. And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus...Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that he had spoken these things unto her. (John 20:11-14,18)

God's angels always draw attention to God, Jesus, Holy Spirit and their purposes. If you are blessed to experience an angelic encounter, focus on the message and its Sender, not the messenger.

TITLES OF ANGELS

Just as titles reveal information about you—i.e., you are a Christians, a wife, husband, mother, father, sister, brother, pastor—so titles provide revelation about angels. In the Scriptures angels are called...

-Messengers.

These are the angels composing an innumerable group, visualized by Daniel (Daniel 7:10). They carry out the will of God in Heaven and earth. They interpret God's instructions, protect, provide guidance, bring answers to prayer, announce, warn, instruct, bring judgment, encourage, sustain, deliver, and intercede on behalf of Believers.

-Holy ones.

“Holy ones” means that angels are separated and set aside for specific purposes. This term underscores their pure and righteous nature.

I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven... (Daniel 8:13)

-The heavenly host.

“Heavenly host” refers to the innumerable number of angels that defend God's people. The name “Lord of hosts” occurs some 261 times in the Old Testament. God is first called the “Lord of hosts” in 1 Samuel 1:3. The word *Lord* refers to Yahweh, the self-existent, redemptive God. The word *hosts* is a translation of the Hebrew word *sabaoth*, meaning “armies”—a reference to the angelic armies of heaven. Thus, another way of saying “Lord of Hosts” is “God of the armies of heaven.”

-Mighty ones.

The Prophet Joel pleads:

Assemble yourselves, and come, all ye heathen, and gather yourselves together round about: thither cause thy mighty ones to come down, Oh Lord. (Joel 3:11)

The Apostle Paul speaks of the mighty angels of God:

And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels... (2 Thessalonians 1:7)

-Sons of God.

This title emphasizes the close relationship of angels to God, their godlike qualities, and the capacity in which they function before Him. God's revelation to Job explains how "...the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy..." (Job 38:7)

The book of Job also gives us a glimpse into the throne room when "...there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord..." (Job 1:6)

-Stars.

Angels are sometimes referred to as "stars". At the time of creation the "stars" sang together for joy (Job 38:7). Judges 5:20 speaks of the "stars" (angels) fighting against Israel's enemy, Sisera.

An angel talking with John explains a vision he had seen saying...

The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:20)

In Revelation 9, John records that:

...the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star (angel) fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. (Revelation 9:1-2)

Jude describes the evil angels as "Raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness forever" (Jude 13).

-Watchers.

Angels are called watchers one place in Scripture:

I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven... (Daniel 4:13)

Watchers never sleep. They are always alert as they serve as spiritual watchmen.

-Elect.

The angels who did not join Satan's rebellion are called "elect":

I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality. (1 Timothy 5:21)

When the spiritual battles of life get difficult, always remember that there are two elect angels for every evil one, as only one-third of the angels joined Satan's rebellion. There are more with you than with the enemy (2 Kings 6:16).

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Summarize the following characteristics of angels.

-Angels are invisible spirit beings.

-Angels are radiant from being in God's presence.

-Angels are awesome in appearance.

-Angels can assume human form.

-Angels appear in supernatural ways.

-Angels are sexless and do not procreate.

-Angels are immortal.

-Angels are truthful.

-Angels are faithful.

-Angels have emotions.

-Angels are elect.

-Angels observe us.

-Angels have a will.

-Angels have appetites.

-Angels are intelligent.

-Angels function under authority.

-Angels are communicative.

-Angels are innumerable.

-Angels are obedient.

-Angels are holy.

-Angels are reverent.

-Angels are strong, powerful, and mighty.

-Angels are not limited by an earthly body.

-Angels direct attention to Jesus Christ.

3. List eight titles for angels in the Bible and write a summary statement on each.

#1

#2

#3

#4 _____

#5 _____

#6 _____

#7 _____

#8 _____

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER FOUR

THE ORGANIZATION OF ANGELS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain the organization of thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers.
- Discuss the various categories of angels including:
 - Archangel.
 - Cherubim.
 - Seraphim.
 - Living creatures.
 - Messengers.
 - Watchers.
 - Hosts.
- List the special groups of angels mentioned in the book of Revelation.
- Identify angels mentioned by name in the Bible.

KEY VERSE:

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him. (Colossians 1:16)

INTRODUCTION

There are two kinds of angels: The good angels of God, which are the subject of this manual, and Satan and his evil angels (demons). A summary study about the evil angels is provided in Appendix Three. Harvestime also provides an in-depth study of this subject entitled "*Spiritual Strategies: A Manual Of Spiritual Warfare*," available free at the Harvestime website: <http://www.harvestime.org>.

This chapter concerns the organization of God's angels.

GOD'S ORGANIZATION

God has organized His angels in a special order. The Bible does not reveal the details of that order, but it does indicate a specific organization:

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16; See also Ephesians 3:10)

The organization of the invisible world is described in terms of thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers. We are not given details of this structure. The emphasis is that God created all things in Heaven and on earth and that He is sovereign over these divisions. After His resurrection, Jesus is confirmed to have “...*gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him*” (1 Peter 3:22).

Satan is an imitator, not an originator. He has organized his demons in a structure similar to that of God's forces:

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. (Ephesians 6:12)

Satan has organized his forces into:

Principalities: A principality is the territory or jurisdiction of a prince. Satan has placed a prince over each principality. The prince of the power of Persia is mentioned in Daniel 10. This is how Satan works on a national level influencing governments and nations.

Powers and rulers of darkness of this world: These are two categories of demons at work in the social, political, and cultural systems of the world.

Spiritual wickedness in high places: High places in the Old Testament were where worship was carried on. This is how Satan works in the religious structures of the world.

God's good angels aid Believers in the battle against evil spiritual forces, a subject dealt with in Chapter Fourteen of this manual.

CATEGORIES OF ANGELS

As chapter one explained, angels sometimes function in large companies (Psalms 68:17; Matthew 26:53) and they are innumerable (Hebrews 12:22). There are literally multitudes of angels (Luke 2:13-15) who are apparently classified according to the duties they perform. Let's look at some of these classifications.

-Archangel.

The word “archangel” is mentioned twice in Scripture. The Greek word is *archaggelos* which is a combination of *archo* (meaning "first" in political rank or power) and *aggelos* (meaning "messenger"). An archangel is the highest ranked angel and leader of the angels. It denotes a definite distinction of rank for a special service.

The only archangel mentioned by name in the Bible is Michael (Jude 1:9). One other Scripture mentions an archangel in reference to the coming of Christ: *"For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first"* (1 Thessalonians 4:16).

The Scriptures are not clear as to whether or not there are other archangels in addition to Michael or whether or not he is the archangel who announces the return of Christ.

-Cherubim.

Cherubs are one of the most commonly depicted types of angels in art, often portrayed as cute, chubby babies with wings. This portrayal is only an invention of artists, as they actually are beautiful and powerful beings. The cherubim are the angels closest to God, serving directly under Him rather than being messengers to mankind.

According to Genesis, two cherubs were assigned to guard the tree of life after Adam and Eve were excluded from the garden because of sin (Genesis 3:24). They were stationed there with flaming swords so that man could not intrude into God's presence, partake of the tree of life, and live forever in their sinful state. They teach us that sin and God's presence are incompatible apart from the righteousness granted to those who trust in Jesus Christ as Savior.

There were two golden images of cherubim placed on the ark (Hebrews 9:5). It was here that God manifested Himself on earth in Old Testament times and where His visible glory rested (1 Samuel 4:4; Psalm 80:1; Ezekiel 1:26, 28). One cherubim was placed at each end of the mercy-seat, with wings stretched upward. They faced each other and looked down toward the mercy-seat, symbolic of viewing the blood that was sprinkled there by the High Priest, representative of the blood that would someday be shed for all mankind by the Lord Jesus Christ. The cherubim were also prominent in Solomon's temple and Ezekiel's vision (1 Kings 6:23-29; Ezekiel 41:17).

Ezekiel 1:5–11 gives a more detailed description of these angels. In Ezekiel's vision, he saw cherubim as living creatures next to the throne of God, worshipping and serving Him. The cherubim had four faces: That of a man, a lion, an ox and an eagle (although Ezekiel 10:14 replaces the face of the ox with the face of a cherub). The lion, ox, eagle, and man are all kings of their species.

Early church fathers associated these four faces with the Gospels and the different profiles of Christ they present. Matthew, the lion, reflected the kingly aspect of Jesus. Mark, the ox, represent His patience and endurance. Luke represented man, as Christ's humanness is emphasized in the book. John represented the eagle, the soaring majesty of the Word incarnate in human form.

Each living creature possessed four wings, two of which covered their bodies and two of which extended upward. They traveled on what appeared to be a "wheel in the middle of a wheel" and went in any direction with great speed like a flash of lightning (Ezekiel 1:16). Their appearance was brilliant like fire and their wings made noise like a great waterfall. The vision depicts God moving swiftly on earth and in heaven to accomplish His purposes. The cherubim are frequently called living creatures in these passages.

From these accounts it would seem that the Cherubim are guardians of God's presence, His sovereignty, and His holiness. Psalm 80:1 and Psalm 99:1 refer to the Shekinah glory that represents God who is enthroned above the cherubim.

-Seraphim.

Seraphim, whose name means "fiery ones", are mentioned in Isaiah 6:2,3,6,7. Their name most likely reflects their consuming devotion to God. They are represented as appearing above the King as He sat upon His throne, ready to minister to Him.

They were similar to cherubim, but had six wings. Two wings covered their faces, symbolic of the fact that even sinless creatures cannot look upon a righteous God. Two wings covered their feet, symbolizing their reverence for God. With two wings they flew, representing their readiness to execute God's orders. From the Seraphim we learn that God is Holy, He must be worshipped with reverence, and we must be prompt to obey His commands.

The Seraphim were crying out, *"Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: His glory is the fullness of the whole earth"* (Isaiah 6:3). Their proclamation was so powerful that the supports of the throne room shook. They were ablaze with worship of the holy God. Isaiah's response to this vision was: *"Woe is me...I am a man of unclean lips"* (Isaiah 6:5). When Isaiah encountered God's presence and this powerful worship scene, He recognized his own sinfulness.

One of the seraphim touched Isaiah's lips with a live coal from the altar, and then God gave Isaiah a message for the people of Judah. Only after Isaiah's lips were cleansed was he ready to deliver God's message. A mandate from God must be based on personal experience, not just acquired information or doctrinal knowledge.

-Living Creatures.

This group of angels are mentioned in Ezekiel 1-10 and Revelation 4:6,8; 5:6. Their chief ministry appears to be worship of God (chapters 4,5,7, and 19). They also witness the worship of God by redeemed men (Revelation 14).

The Living Creatures are distinguished from the other angels (Revelation 15:7); they join the elders and the 144,000 in "new songs" (Revelation 5:8, 9; 14:3); they warn of divine justice (Isaiah 6:3-5); and they deliver the commission to those who execute divine judgment (Ezekiel 10:2, 7; Revelation 6 and 15). They are with the Church at the time of the overthrow of her enemies (Revelation 19:4). They are described as having one face, six wings, and with eyes around them and within. Some theologians believe they are Seraphim.

-Messengers.

These angels compose the innumerable group seen by Daniel who carry out the will of God in Heaven and earth (Daniel 7:10). They interpret God's will, protect, provide guidance, bring answers to prayer, announce, warn, instruct, bring judgment, encourage, sustain, deliver, and intercede on behalf of Believers.

-Watchers.

“Watchers” are used as a term for angels in only one place in the Bible:

This matter is by the decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones: to the intent that the living may know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will, and setteth up over it the basest of men.
(Daniel 4:17)

As used in this passage, watchers are apparently angels who observe what is occurring and communicate God's decree of judgment.

-Hosts.

Hosts refers to the military organization of God's heavenly army. Psalm 46:7 indicates that God has hosts of angels. Second Chronicles 18:18 pictures the Lord sitting on the throne and the host of Heaven standing around Him. Jesus is called the Lord of Hosts repeatedly in the Old Testament and is acknowledged as the creator of the hosts of Heaven:

Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee. (Nehemiah 9:6)

SPECIAL GROUPS OF ANGELS

The Bible also mentions special groups of angels in the book of Revelation which are identified by the service they perform:

-Angels of the seven churches:	Revelation 1:20
-Four angels who control the winds:	Revelation 1:7
-Seven angels who stand before God:	Revelation 8:2
-Seven angels who administer the seven last plagues:	Revelation 15:1,7
-The angel of the abyss:	Revelation 9:11
-The angel over the fire:	Revelation 14:18
-The angel over the waters:	Revelation 16:5

NAMED ANGELS

There are two angels mentioned by name in the Bible:

-Michael: His name means “who is like God”. The angel talking with Daniel in chapters 10-12, refers three times to Michael, who is obviously an angel. He calls him “one of the chief princes” in Daniel 10:13; “prince” in Daniel 10:21; and “the great prince” in Daniel 12:1. Michael appears to be assigned to the welfare of Israel, as other angels are assigned to other nations (Daniel 10:13, 20-21).

Michael is described as an archangel in Jude and is mentioned as refusing to bring a slanderous accusation against the devil. In Revelation 12:7, Michael and his angels appear in a battle, implying that Michael is a military leader. Michael commands the hosts of the Lord against the forces of the dragon (Satan) in a war in heaven: *"And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven"* (Revelation 12:7-8).

-Gabriel: The meaning of his name is "mighty one of God" or "strong man of God". Gabriel was the angel sent to Daniel to explain the vision of the ram and the he-goat and to communicate the prediction of the seventy weeks (Daniel 8:16; 9:21-27).

Whenever Gabriel appears in Scripture it is to communicate revelation or interpret God’s plans and purposes regarding the Messiah and the Kingdom. He announced the birth of John the Baptist to Zechariah (Luke 1:11), and the birth of the Messiah to Mary (Luke 1:26). He apparently appeared in human form on these occasions, as he spoke with a man’s voice and was able to touch the recipients of his messages.

Gabriel describes himself in the words, *“I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God”* (1:19).

A Special Angel: There is another angel in Scripture who is called “The Angel of the Lord”. That is the subject of Chapter Six.

YOU ARE NOT ALONE...

In addition to the Trinity of God, there is a mighty group of angels watching over you. You are never alone in your sorrow or your struggles. These messengers of God will be at your side from now through eternity.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Explain the organization of thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers.

3 Discuss the various categories of angels including:

-Archangel.

-Cherubim.

-Seraphim.

-Living creatures.

-Messengers.

-Watchers.

-Hosts.

4. List the special groups of angels identified in the following references:

Revelation 1:20_____

Revelation 1:7_____

Revelation 8:2_____

Revelation 15:1,7_____

Revelation 9:11_____

Revelation 14:18_____

Revelation 16:5_____

5. Identify two angels mentioned by name in the Bible.

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER FIVE

ANGELS IN THE OLD TESTAMENT

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to summarize the ministry of angels in the Old Testament.

KEY VERSES:

For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward; How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him. (Hebrews 2:2-3)

INTRODUCTION

This chapter concerns the specific ministries of angels in Old Testament times. This summary was developed from the study of Old Testament references to “angel, angels, Michael, Gabriel, Cherubim, and Seraphim”.

OLD TESTAMENT MINISTRIES OF ANGELS

The Old Testament reveals that angels...

-Blocked access to the garden.

Cherubim angels were stationed at the entrance to Eden to block access to the Garden after Adam and Eve sinned lest they partake of the tree of life and live forever in their sinful state:

So he (God) drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life. (Genesis 3:24)

-Directed Hagar.

Abraham's wife, Sarah, concocted a plan for her servant to birth a child through her husband, Abraham. After Hagar conceived, Sarah was jealous and treated her badly, so Hagar fled into the wilderness. There, God sent an angel with divine direction:

And the angel of the Lord found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur. And he said, Hagar, Sarai's maid, whence camest thou? and whither wilt thou go? And she said, I flee from the face of my mistress Sarai. And the

angel of the Lord said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands. (Genesis 16:7-9)

-Announced the birth of Ishmael.

An angel was sent to Hagar with this message:

I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude. And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Behold, thou art with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the Lord hath heard thy affliction. And he will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren. And she called the name of the Lord that spake unto her, Thou God seest me: for she said, Have I also here looked after him that seeth me? (Genesis 16:10-13)

This is believed to be an appearance of the Angel of the Lord which you will learn about in Chapter Six. There were several appearances of this Angel in the Old Testament.

-Announced the birth of Isaac.

Three angels, appearing in human form, came calling on Abraham and Sarah:

And they said unto him, Where is Sarah thy wife? And he said, Behold, in the tent. And he said, I will certainly return unto thee according to the time of life; and, lo, Sarah thy wife shall have a son. And Sarah heard it in the tent door, which was behind him. (Genesis 18:9-10)

-Rescued Hagar and Ishmael.

After the birth of Isaac, problems arose in the home of Abraham and Sarah. Ishmael was disrespectful to Isaac, Sarah wanted him gone, and she asked Abraham to send him away. At first Abraham was resistant, but God let him know it was the right thing to do as the son of promise could not be an heir with the son of the flesh (Galatians 4:28-30). God promised that He would care for Ishmael and make him a great nation (Genesis 21:9-13).

And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and took bread, and a bottle of water, and gave it unto Hagar, putting it on her shoulder, and the child, and sent her away: and she departed, and wandered in the wilderness of Beer-sheba. And the water was spent in the bottle, and she cast the child under one of the shrubs. And she went, and sat her down over against him a good way off, as it were a bowshot: for she said, Let me not see the death of the child. And she sat over against him, and lift up her voice, and wept. And God heard the voice of the lad; and the angel of God called Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her, What aileth thee, Hagar? fear not; for God hath heard the voice of the lad where he is. Arise, lift up the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a great

nation. And God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water; and she went, and filled the bottle with water, and gave the lad drink. (Genesis 21:14-19)

This is believed to be an appearance of the Angel of the Lord.

-Warned of the destruction of Sodom.

Angels appeared in human form to warn Lot regarding the coming destruction of sinful Sodom.

And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing them rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground... And the men said unto Lot...whatsoever thou hast in the city...bring them out of this place: For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of the Lord; and the Lord hath sent us to destroy it. (Genesis 19:1,12-13)

-Destroyed Sodom and rescued Lot.

And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city. And while he lingered, the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the Lord being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city. And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that he said, Escape for thy life; look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest thou be consumed. (Genesis 19:15-17)

-Prevented the slaying of Isaac.

God told Abraham to take his only son, Isaac, and sacrifice him to the Lord. Early the next morning, Abraham set out for the place of sacrifice:

And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood. And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. And the angel of the Lord called unto him out of heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: and he said, Here am I. And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him: for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from me. And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind him a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son. And Abraham called the name of that place Jehovah-jireh: as it is said to this day, In the mount of the Lord it shall be seen. (Genesis 22:9-14)

This is believed to have been another appearance of the Angel of the Lord.

-Guided Eliezer on his mission.

When Abraham dispatched his servant, Eliezer, to find a wife for Isaac, Abraham declared:

The Lord God of heaven, which took me from my father's house, and from the land of my kindred, and which spake unto me, and that sware unto me, saying, Unto thy seed will I give this land; he shall send his angel before thee, and thou shalt take a wife unto my son from thence. (Genesis 24:7)

The servant testified to this divine direction in Genesis 24:40.

-Guided, protected, and prospered Jacob.

Fleeing from his childhood home because of his transgressions, Jacob encountered angels:

And Jacob went out from Beer-sheba, and went toward Haran. And he lighted upon a certain place, and tarried there all night, because the sun was set; and he took of the stones of that place, and put them for his pillows, and lay down in that place to sleep. And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it. And, behold, the Lord stood above it, and said, I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed; And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed. And, behold, I am with thee, and will keep thee in all places whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land; for I will not leave thee, until I have done that which I have spoken to thee of. And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, Surely the Lord is in this place; and I knew it not. And he was afraid, and said, How dreadful is this place! this is none other but the house of God, and this is the gate of heaven. And Jacob rose up early in the morning, and took the stone that he had put for his pillows, and set it up for a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it. And he called the name of that place Bethel: but the name of that city was called Luz at the first. (Genesis 28:10-19)

Jesus later confirmed that the ladder Jacob saw with the angels ascending and descending was Himself:

And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man. (John 1:51)

While Jacob was working for his conniving Uncle Laban, the Angel of the Lord visited him:

And the angel of God spake unto me in a dream, saying, Jacob: And I said, Here am I. And he said, Lift up now thine eyes, and see, all the rams which leap upon the cattle are ringstraked, speckled, and grisled: for I have seen all that Laban doeth unto thee. I am

the God of Bethel, where thou anointedst the pillar, and where thou vowedst a vow unto me: now arise, get thee out from this land, and return unto the land of thy kindred.
(Genesis 31:11-14)

This is believed to be an appearance of the Angel of the Lord because of the declaration, “I am the God of Bethel.”

In the next chapter, Jacob is returning to his homeland as the angel had directed:

And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him. And when Jacob saw them, he said, This is God's host: and he called the name of that place Mahanaim.
(Genesis 31:1-2)

Assured of God’s protection, Jacob called the place of this revelation “Mahanaim” meaning “two hosts”, the angelic host and Jacob’s host of loved ones.

Before arriving home, Jacob had another encounter with an angel. This is another appearance of Angel of the Lord:

And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. And he said, Let me go, for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let thee go, except thou bless me. And he said unto him, What is thy name? And he said, Jacob. And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed. And Jacob asked him, and said, Tell me, I pray thee, thy name. And he said, Wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name? And he blessed him there. And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel: for I have seen God face to face, and my life is preserved. (Genesis 32:24-30)

In his last days, Jacob...

...blessed Joseph, and said, God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long unto this day, The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.
(Genesis 48:15-16)

-Delivered Israel from Egypt.

And the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them: And it came between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel; and it was a cloud and darkness to them, but it gave light by night to these: so that the one came not near the other all the night. And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea; and the Lord caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind all that night, and made the sea dry land, and the waters were divided. And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry ground: and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left. (Exodus 14:19-22)

And when we cried unto the Lord, he heard our voice, and sent an angel, and hath brought us forth out of Egypt. (Numbers 20:16)

These verses also refer to the Angel of the Lord.

-Executed judgment on Pharaoh.

And the Egyptians pursued, and went in after them to the midst of the sea, even all Pharaoh's horses, his chariots, and his horsemen. And it came to pass, that in the morning watch the Lord looked unto the host of the Egyptians through the pillar of fire and of the cloud, and troubled the host of the Egyptians, And took off their chariot wheels, that they drave them heavily: so that the Egyptians said, Let us flee from the face of Israel; for the Lord fighteth for them against the Egyptians. And the Lord said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand over the sea, that the waters may come again upon the Egyptians, upon their chariots, and upon their horsemen. And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and the Lord overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea. And the waters returned, and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, and all the host of Pharaoh that came into the sea after them; there remained not so much as one of them. (Exodus 14:23-28)

-Led Israel through the wilderness.

God said:

Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared. (Exodus 23:20)

And the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them: And it came between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel; and it was a cloud and darkness to them, but it gave light by night to these: so that the one came not near the other all the night. (Exodus 14:19-20)

-Delivered the Old Testament law.

Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator. (Galatians 3:19)

For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward; How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him...(Hebrews 2:2-3)

-Opposed Balaam.

The evil King Balak wanted the Prophet Balaam to curse God's people. God told Balaam not to go with the king's servants, yet despite this Balaam decided to think about it for a night. He wanted to receive the promised rewards from Balak.

And God came unto Balaam at night, and said unto him, If the men come to call thee, rise up, and go with them; but yet the word which I shall say unto thee, that shalt thou do. And Balaam rose up in the morning, and saddled his ass, and went with the princes of Moab. And God's anger was kindled because he went: and the angel of the Lord stood in the way for an adversary against him. Now he was riding upon his ass, and his two servants were with him. And the ass saw the angel of the Lord standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and the ass turned aside out of the way, and went into the field: and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way. But the angel of the Lord stood in a path of the vineyards, a wall being on this side, and a wall on that side. And when the ass saw the angel of the Lord, she thrust herself unto the wall, and crushed Balaam's foot against the wall: and he smote her again. And the angel of the Lord went further, and stood in a narrow place, where was no way to turn either to the right hand or to the left. And when the ass saw the angel of the Lord, she fell down under Balaam: and Balaam's anger was kindled, and he smote the ass with a staff. And the Lord opened the mouth of the ass, and she said unto Balaam, What have I done unto thee, that thou hast smitten me these three times? And Balaam said unto the ass, Because thou hast mocked me: I would there were a sword in mine hand, for now would I kill thee. And the ass said unto Balaam, Am not I thine ass, upon which thou hast ridden ever since I was thine unto this day? was I ever wont to do so unto thee? And he said, Nay. Then the Lord opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of the Lord standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and he bowed down his head, and fell flat on his face. And the angel of the Lord said unto him, Wherefore hast thou smitten thine ass these three times? behold, I went out to withstand thee, because thy way is perverse before me: And the ass saw me, and turned from me these three times: unless she had turned from me, surely now also I had slain thee, and saved her alive. And Balaam said unto the angel of the Lord, I have sinned; for I knew not that thou stoodest in the way against me: now therefore, if it displease thee, I will get me back again. And the angel of the Lord said

unto Balaam, Go with the men: but only the word that I shall speak unto thee, that thou shalt speak. So Balaam went with the princes of Balak. (Numbers 22:20-35)

-Encouraged Joshua.

It was just prior to entering the Promised Land, and Joshua was concerned about what lay ahead:

And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand: and Joshua went unto him, and said unto him, Art thou for us, or for our adversaries? And he said, Nay; but as captain of the host of the Lord am I now come. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and did worship, and said unto him, What saith my lord unto his servant? And the captain of the Lord's host said unto Joshua, Loose thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place whereon thou standest is holy. And Joshua did so. (Joshua 5:13-15)

This is believed to be an appearance of the Angel of the Lord.

-Warned of God's judgment.

Therefore now go, lead the people unto the place of which I have spoken unto thee: behold, mine Angel shall go before thee: nevertheless in the day when I visit I will visit their sin upon them. (Exodus 32:34)

And an angel of the Lord came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I sware unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars: but ye have not obeyed my voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. And it came to pass, when the angel of the Lord spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept (Judges 2:1-4)

-Announced Samson's birth and provided instructions for his upbringing.

An angel announced to Manoah's barren wife that she would have a son (Judges 13:2-5). The woman told her husband what had happened, and he prayed and asked God to send the angel again to teach them how to raise the child. His prayer was answered (Judges 13:9-33). The account in this passage is thought to be an appearance of the Angel of the Lord.

-Gave wisdom to God's people.

David was said to have the wisdom of an angel:

To fetch about this form of speech hath thy servant Joab done this thing: and my lord is wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of God, to know all things that are in the earth. (2 Samuel 14:20)

And Achish answered and said to David, I know that thou art good in my sight, as an angel of God: notwithstanding the princes of the Philistines have said, He shall not go up with us to the battle. (1 Samuel 29:9)

-Chastened God's people.

David had pridefully sinned by falling prey to Satan's temptation to number the people of Israel. God gave him a choice of judgments for his transgression: Either three years' famine; three months in the hands of his enemies; or three days experiencing the sword of the Lord (1 Chronicles 21:12). David picked the latter:

So the Lord sent pestilence upon Israel: and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men. And God sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it: and as he was destroying, the Lord beheld, and he repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed, It is enough, stay now thine hand. And the angel of the Lord stood by the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. And David lifted up his eyes, and saw the angel of the Lord stand between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders of Israel, who were clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces. And David said unto God, Is it not I that commanded the people to be numbered? even I it is that have sinned and done evil indeed; but as for these sheep, what have they done? let thine hand, I pray thee, O Lord my God, be on me, and on my father's house; but not on thy people, that they should be plagued. Then the angel of the Lord commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up, and set up an altar unto the Lord in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. (1 Chronicles 21:13-15)

-Brought provision and comfort.

Elijah stood against idolatry and destroyed the false prophets of Baal:

And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done, and withal how he had slain all the prophets with the sword. Then Jezebel sent a messenger unto Elijah, saying, So let the gods do to me, and more also, if I make not thy life as the life of one of them by to morrow about this time. And when he saw that, he arose, and went for his life, and came to Beer-sheba, which belongeth to Judah, and left his servant there. But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a juniper tree: and he requested for himself that he might die; and said, It is enough; now, O Lord, take away

my life; for I am not better than my fathers. And as he lay and slept under a juniper tree, behold, then an angel touched him, and said unto him, Arise and eat. And he looked, and, behold, there was a cake baken on the coals, and a cruse of water at his head. And he did eat and drink, and laid him down again. And the angel of the Lord came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise and eat; because the journey is too great for thee. And he arose, and did eat and drink, and went in the strength of that meat forty days and forty nights unto Horeb the mount of God. (1 Kings 19:5-8)

-Conquered the enemies of God's people.

Before entering Canaan, Israel received a promise from the Lord:

And I will send an angel before thee; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite... (Exodus 23:2)

Then there came the day when, surrounded by the enemy, God's people were outnumbered. In the midst of this impending devastation, King Hezekiah declared:

Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him: for there be more with us than with him: With him is an arm of flesh; but with us is the Lord our God to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. (2 Chronicles 32:7-8)

Through the prayers of Hezekiah, Isaiah, and God's people, the enemy was destroyed by an angel:

And the Lord sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. Thus the Lord saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all other, and guided them on every side. (2 Chronicles 32:21-22)

Then the angel of the Lord went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. (Isaiah 37:36)

The psalmist recognized the power of angels and declared regarding the enemy:

Let them be as chaff before the wind: and let the angel of the Lord chase them. Let their way be dark and slippery: and let the angel of the Lord persecute them. (Psalm 35:5-6)

An angel also declared:

Curse ye Meroz, said the angel of the Lord, curse ye bitterly the inhabitants thereof; because they came not to the help of the Lord, to the help of the Lord against the mighty. (Judges 5:23)

-Protected God's people.

Numerous Old Testament accounts reveal God's protection for His people through His angels. One of the most classic accounts is when the prophet Elijah was surrounded by an enemy army, but was surrounded by a force of angels much greater:

Therefore sent he thither horses, and chariots, and a great host: and they came by night, and compassed the city about. And when the servant of the man of God was risen early, and gone forth, behold, an host compassed the city both with horses and chariots. And his servant said unto him, Alas, my master! how shall we do? And he answered, Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. And Elisha prayed, and said, Lord, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And the Lord opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha. (2 Kings 6:14-17)

The Psalmist confirms:

For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. (Psalm 91:11-12)

The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them. (Psalm 34:7)

-Delivered God's people.

There are several Old Testament accounts of angels being involved in the supernatural deliverance of God's people. Angels delivered Lot from wicked Sodom before its destruction:

And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city. And while he lingered, the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the Lord being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city. And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that he said, Escape for thy life; look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest thou be consumed. (Genesis 19:15-17)

At one point in Israel's journey to their Promised Land "... the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them" (Exodus 14:19). Paul clearly identifies Him as the Lord Jesus, our spiritual rock:

Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea; And did all eat the same spiritual meat; And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ. (1 Corinthians 10:1-4)

An angel was seen in a blazing furnace that failed to burn three Hebrew men of God. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego had refused to worship the idol set up by King Nebuchadnezzar:

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter. If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up. Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of fury, and the form of his visage was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego: therefore he spake, and commanded that they should heat the furnace one seven times more than it was wont to be heated. And he commanded the most mighty men that were in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace. Then these men were bound in their coats, their hosen, and their hats, and their other garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. Therefore because the king's commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the flame of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego. And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king. He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God. (Daniel 3:16-30)

This is thought to be another appearance of the Angel of the Lord.

The Prophet Daniel was also delivered through the ministry of an angel. Some evil leaders convinced King Darius to sign a law forbidding petitions to be made to anyone other than him. Daniel continued to pray to God, so the evil leaders told King Darius that he was in violation of the law. Because the law of the Medes and Persians could not be changed, Darius was forced to send Daniel to the lion's den.

Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast him into the den of lions. Now the king spake and said unto Daniel, Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee. And a stone was brought and laid upon the mouth of the den; and the

king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords; that the purpose might not be changed concerning Daniel. Then the king went to his palace, and passed the night fasting: neither were instruments of musick brought before him: and his sleep went from him. Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions. And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions? Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever. My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt. (Daniel 6:16-22)

-Brought messages to the prophets.

By definition, a prophet delivers a message from God to the people. Several Old Testament prophets received messages from God through angels:

But the angel of the Lord said to Elijah the Tishbite, Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and say unto them, Is it not because there is not a God in Israel, that ye go to inquire of Baal-zebub the god of Ekron?...And the angel of the Lord said unto Elijah, Go down with him: be not afraid of him. And he arose, and went down with him unto the king. (2 Kings 1:3,15)

One of the most interesting encounters with angels occurred when an angel, identified as Gabriel, brought the Prophet Daniel a series of messages regarding future events (Daniel 8:16; 9:20-27). Another angel named Michael, known as is the defender of Israel, came to assist Gabriel (Daniel 10:13).

The visions given to the Prophet Zechariah were explained by angels. Angelic reproofs and predictions regarding the rebuilding of Jerusalem were made in Zechariah 1:13-17. The man on the red horse was the Angel of the Lord and those who followed him on horses symbolized His angelic attendants. Angelic predictions regarding the restoration of true faith are recorded in Zechariah 3:1-6. Joshua, the Jewish priest, was pardoned purified, and clothed in holiness. Angelic predictions of the Messiah are given in Zechariah 3:6-8 and amplified in Zechariah 6:12-13.

-Ministered to the nations.

Michael, the archangel, guards Israel, God's chosen nation (Daniel 12:1). Angels also are assigned to Gentile nations (Daniel 4:17). Angels can easily influence government leaders of those nations (Daniel 11:1). The angels will also bring God's judgment upon the evil nations of the world in the end-times (Revelation chapters 8,9,16).

-Participated in commissioning spiritual leaders.

Moses was commissioned by the angel of the Lord that spoke to Him from a burning bush:

Now Moses kept the flock of Jethro his father in law, the priest of Midian: and he led the flock to the backside of the desert, and came to the mountain of God, even to Horeb. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed. And Moses said, I will now turn aside, and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt. And when the Lord saw that he turned aside to see, God called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said, Moses, Moses. And he said, Here am I. And he said, Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground. Moreover he said, I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God. And the Lord said, I have surely seen the affliction of my people which are in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows; And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites. Now therefore, behold, the cry of the children of Israel is come unto me: and I have also seen the oppression wherewith the Egyptians oppress them. Come now therefore, and I will send thee unto Pharaoh, that thou mayest bring forth my people the children of Israel out of Egypt. (Exodus 3:1-10)

This event is considered another appearance of the Angel of the Lord and is recounted by Stephen in his final message prior to martyrdom:

And when forty years were expired, there appeared to him in the wilderness of mount Sina an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush. When Moses saw it, he wondered at the sight: and as he drew near to behold it, the voice of the Lord came unto him, Saying, I am the God of thy fathers, the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. Then Moses trembled, and durst not behold. Then said the Lord to him, Put off thy shoes from thy feet: for the place where thou standest is holy ground. (Acts 7:30-33)

Gideon was also commissioned to ministry by God through an angel:

And there came an angel of the Lord, and sat under an oak which was in Ophrah, that pertained unto Joash the Abi-ezrite: and his son Gideon threshed wheat by the winepress, to hide it from the Midianites. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him, and said unto him, The Lord is with thee, thou mighty man of valour. And Gideon said unto him, Oh my Lord, if the Lord be with us, why then is all this befallen us? and where be all his miracles which our fathers told us of, saying, Did not the Lord bring us up from Egypt? but now the Lord hath forsaken us, and delivered us into the hands of the Midianites. And the Lord looked upon him, and said, Go in this thy might, and thou shalt save Israel from the hand of the Midianites: have not I sent thee? And he said unto him, Oh my Lord, wherewith shall I save Israel? behold, my family is poor in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house. And the Lord said unto him, Surely I will be with thee, and thou shalt smite the Midianites as one man. (Judges 6:11-16)

Note that “the Lord said to him”, confirming this is an appearance of the Angel of the Lord.

Isaiah was another spiritual leader commissioned by God through angelic revelations. He records this event in detail:

In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me. (Isaiah 6:1-8)

Samson was also commissioned to ministry by an angel before his birth (Judges 13).

-Provided glimpses into the throne room of Heaven.

References to Cherubim and Seraphim in the Old Testament provided glimpses into the throne room of God. See Ezekiel chapters 9-10 and Isaiah 6:1-8. The reproductions of the Cherubim in the tabernacle, on the mercy seat, and in the temple were constant reminders of the holiness of God.

-Ministered in worship.

The Old Testament confirms the worship of God by angels.

Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word. Bless ye the Lord, all ye his hosts; ye ministers of his, that do his pleasure. (Psalm 103:20-21)

You will learn more about their worship in Chapter Eleven of this manual.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verses.

2. Using the following verses, summarize the ministries of angels in the Old Testament.

-Genesis 3:24

-Genesis 16:7-9

-Genesis 16:10-13

-Genesis 18:9-10

-Genesis 21:9-19

-Genesis 19:1,12-13

-Genesis 19:15-17

-Genesis 22:9-14

-Genesis 24:7,40

-Genesis 28:10-19; 31:1-2,11-14; 32:24-30; 48:15-16;

-Exodus 14:19-22; Numbers 20:16

-Exodus 14:23-28

-Exodus 23:20; 14:19-20

-Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2-3

-Numbers 22:20-35

-Joshua 5:13-15

-Exodus 32:34; Judges 2:1-4

-Judges 13:2-33

-2 Samuel 14:20; 29:9

-1 Chronicles 21:12-15

-1 Kings 19:5-8

-Exodus 33:2; 2 Chronicles 32:7-8,:21-22; Isaiah 37:36

-Psalm 35:5-6; Judges 5:23

-2 Kings 6:14-17; Psalm 91:11-12; 34:7

-Genesis 19:15-17; Daniel 3:16-30

-Daniel 6:16-22

-2 Kings 1:3,15; Daniel 8:16; 9:20-27; 10:13

-Daniel 12:1; 4:17; 11:1;

-Exodus 3:1-10; Acts 7:30-33; Judges 6:11-16; Isaiah 6:1-8

-Zechariah 1:13-17; 3:1-6; 6:6-8,12-13.

-Ezekiel chapters 9-10 and Isaiah 6:1-8.

-Psalm 103:20-21; 148:2

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER SIX

THE ANGEL OF THE LORD

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- List the names of the Angel of the Lord.
- Summarize the doctrine of the Trinity of God.
- Discuss the appearances of the Angel of the Lord in the following passages:
- Summarize the ministries of the Angel of the Lord.
- Explain the importance of understanding the concept of the Angel of the Lord.

KEY VERSE:

He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God. (Daniel 3:25)

INTRODUCTION

The Angel of the Lord. The Angel of His Presence. The Angel of Jehovah. The Angel of the Covenant. Captain of the Lord's hosts. These are the names given to a mysterious angel who appears frequently in Old Testament times. Who was this angel? To whom did He appear? What were His purposes?

THE TRINITY OF GOD

To discover the identify of this Angel, one must first understand the doctrine of the Trinity of God. The one true God is revealed in three distinct personalities of the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit. They are one in essence, one God with three distinct natures.

In the Old Testament, the Hebrew word for God, "Elohim", is a plural word. Plural pronouns are used of God at the time of creation (Genesis 1:26). The strongest Old Testament verse for the doctrine of the Trinity is:

Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me. (Isaiah 48:16)

In the New Testament, the Father, Son, and Spirit are confirmed to be divine, to do the works of God, and to be worshipped. Much is written about the deity of Jesus (examples in John 1:1; Titus 2:13), yet He is distinguished from the Father and the Spirit. The Spirit is also God

(Matthew 28:19-20; Acts 5:3-5), but is distinguished from the Father and the Son.

God has a triune nature with three distinct personalities, yet He is one God:

Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord. (Deuteronomy 6:4)

There are several Scriptures which confirm this triune nature of God. When Jesus was being baptized by John the Baptist in the Jordan River, God spoke and the Holy Spirit descended:

And Jesus, when He was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon Him: And lo, a voice from Heaven saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. (Matthew 3:16-17)

Understanding this triune nature of God is essential to identifying the Angel of the Lord. Here are some other Scriptures confirming the Trinity: John 15:26; 1 Peter 4:14; Romans 8:2-3; 2 Corinthians 13:14; Ephesians 2:18; Acts 2:33.

APPEARANCES OF THE ANGEL OF THE LORD

With this background summary of the theology of the Trinity, we are ready to survey the appearances of the Angel of the Lord in Old Testament times.

First, we must be clear that the Angel of the Lord was not God the Father, as God has never appeared in bodily form:

No man hath seen God at any time. (1 John 4:12)

No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him. (John 1:18)

The Angel of the Lord is not the Holy Spirit. Although He “came upon” people of God in Old Testament times, He did not come to dwell with Believers until after the ascension of Christ (Acts 2).

The Angel of the Lord is believed to be Old Testament appearances of Jesus Christ. The Angel of the Lord was not just from the Lord, He is the Lord. This belief is supported by the promises He makes, the actions He takes, and how He spoke for God in the first person.

Let’s take a look at the Old Testament appearances of the Angel of the Lord which provide confirmation that this Angel is the Lord Jesus Christ.

-Hagar. An angel was sent to Hagar with this message:

I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude. And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Behold, thou art with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the Lord hath heard thy affliction. And he will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren. And she called the name of the Lord that spake unto her, Thou God seest me: for she said, Have I also here looked after him that seeth me? (Genesis 16:10-13)

The promise to Hagar was in the first person: “I will multiply...” (Genesis 16:7-13; 21:17-20). Moses also confirmed that it was the Angel of Jehovah who spoke to her (Genesis 16:13 ASV).

-Abraham.

And the angel of the Lord called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time, And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son: That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies; And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice. (Genesis 22:15-18)

How do we know this angel in Genesis 22:17 is actually God? A messenger angel would not say “I will multiply your descendants exceedingly, so that they shall not be counted for multitude” (verse 10). A messenger angel would say “God will do this.”

-Jacob.

While Jacob was working for his conniving Uncle Laban, an angel visited him:

And the angel of God spake unto me in a dream, saying, Jacob: And I said, Here am I. And he said, Lift up now thine eyes, and see, all the rams which leap upon the cattle are ringstraked, speckled, and grisled: for I have seen all that Laban doeth unto thee. I am the God of Bethel, where thou anointedst the pillar, and where thou vowedst a vow unto me: now arise, get thee out from this land, and return unto the land of thy kindred. (Genesis 31:11-14)

The identity of this angel was made clear. He said: “I am the God of Bethel...”

Before arriving home, Jacob had another encounter with an angel.

And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. And he said, Let me go, for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let thee go, except thou bless

me. And he said unto him, What is thy name? And he said, Jacob. And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed. And Jacob asked him, and said, Tell me, I pray thee, thy name. And he said, Wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name? And he blessed him there. And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel: for I have seen God face to face, and my life is preserved. (Genesis 32:24-30)

The Angel did what Jesus does through the born-again experience: He supernaturally changed Jacob and gave Him a new identity. Jacob knew that He had seen a member of the Trinity of God face-to-face.

Nearing the end of his life, while blessing Joseph's sons, Jacob said...

...God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long unto this day, The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth. (Genesis 48:15-16)

Jesus is the Redeemer!

-Moses.

When the Angel of the Lord appeared to Moses, the one who spoke to Him is called the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. It was on that occasion that God revealed His name as "I Am That I am" (Exodus 3:1-6).

Stephen confirmed this appearance of the Lord in his final message prior to his martyrdom:

And when forty years were expired, there appeared to him in the wilderness of mount Sina an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush. When Moses saw it, he wondered at the sight: and as he drew near to behold it, the voice of the Lord came unto him, Saying, I am the God of thy fathers, the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. (Acts 7:30-32)

-The nation of Israel.

The Angel of the Lord was assigned to deliver Israel, to go before them, to lead them to their promised land, and to pardon their sins—all functions of Jesus. An angel cannot pardon sin (Exodus 23:20-23).

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. (Isaiah 63:9)

Who saves us? Who redeemed us? Jesus Christ!

Later, in Judges 2:1 it was confirmed that *“I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers”*. An angel did not promise the land to Israel. It was promised by God.

At one point in Israel’s journey to their Promised Land *“... the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them”* (Exodus 14:19). Paul clearly identifies Him as the Lord Jesus, our spiritual rock:

Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea; And did all eat the same spiritual meat; And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ. (1 Corinthians 10:1-4)

In the following incident, the angel speaking is clearly a member of the Godhead:

And an angel of the Lord came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars: but ye have not obeyed my voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. And it came to pass, when the angel of the Lord spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept. (Judges 2:1-4)

-Joshua.

The Angel of the Lord introduced himself as *“Captain of the Army of the Lord”*:

And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand: and Joshua went unto him, and said unto him, Art thou for us, or for our adversaries? And he said, Nay; but as captain of the host of the Lord am I now come. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and did worship, and said unto him, What saith my lord unto his servant? And the captain of the Lord’s host said unto Joshua, Loose thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place whereon thou standest is holy. And Joshua did so. (Joshua 5:13-15)

Jesus is the leader of the heavenly host known as the army of God.

-Gideon.

Gideon was commissioned to ministry by God through an angel:

And there came an angel of the Lord, and sat under an oak which was in Ophrah, that pertained unto Joash the Abi-ezrite: and his son Gideon threshed wheat by the winepress, to hide it from the Midianites. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him, and said unto him, The Lord is with thee, thou mighty man of valour. And Gideon said unto him, Oh my Lord, if the Lord be with us, why then is all this befallen us? and where be all his miracles which our fathers told us of, saying, Did not the Lord bring us up from Egypt? but now the Lord hath forsaken us, and delivered us into the hands of the Midianites. And the Lord looked upon him, and said, Go in this thy might, and thou shalt save Israel from the hand of the Midianites: have not I sent thee? And he said unto him, Oh my Lord, wherewith shall I save Israel? behold, my family is poor in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house. And the Lord said unto him, Surely I will be with thee, and thou shalt smite the Midianites as one man. (Judges 6:11-16)

Gideon knew this was a special manifestation and feared that he would die, thinking he had seen the face of God:

And when Gideon perceived that he was an angel of the Lord, Gideon said, Alas, O Lord God! for because I have seen an angel of the Lord face to face. And the Lord said unto him, Peace be unto thee; fear not: thou shalt not die. Then Gideon built an altar there unto the Lord, and called it Jehovah-shalom. (Judges 6:22-24)

-Manoah and his wife.

An angel announced to Manoah's barren wife that she would have a son (Judges 13:2-5). The woman told her husband what happened and Manoah prayed and asked God to send the angel again to teach them how to raise the child. The angel returned to give further instructions in Judges 13:7-15. The Bible says that ...

...Manoah knew not that he was an angel of the Lord. And Manoah said unto the angel of the Lord, What is thy name, that when thy sayings come to pass we may do thee honour? And the angel of the Lord said unto him, Why askest thou thus after my name, seeing it is secret? So Manoah took a kid with a meat offering, and offered it upon a rock unto the Lord: and the angel did wondrously; and Manoah and his wife looked on. For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of the Lord ascended in the flame of the altar. And Manoah and his wife looked on it, and fell on their faces to the ground. But the angel of the Lord did no more appear to Manoah and to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was an angel of the Lord. And Manoah said unto his wife, We shall surely die, because we have seen God. But his wife said unto him, If the Lord were pleased to kill us, he would not have received a burnt offering and a meat offering at our hands, neither would he have shewed us all these things, nor would as at this time have told us such things as these. (Judges 13:16-33)

Manoah and his wife knew this was a special Angel of the Trinity of God.

-Three Hebrew men.

An angel was seen in a blazing furnace with Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego who had refused to worship the idol set up by King Nebuchadnezzar:

Then these men were bound in their coats, their hosen, and their hats, and their other garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. Therefore because the king's commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the flame of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego. And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king. He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God. (Daniel 3:21-25)

Even the wicked King Nebuchadnezzar recognized the fourth “man” as the Son of God.

-The Prophet Zechariah.

During a series of visions, Zechariah saw the Angel of the Lord interceding in behalf of Jerusalem and cleansing Joshua—all ministries of Jesus (Zechariah 1,3,6).

THE MINISTRIES OF THE ANGEL OF THE LORD

These Biblical accounts confirm that the ministries of the Angel of the Lord are identical to those of Jesus, which supports the belief that these were preincarnate appearances of Christ.

-The Angel of the Lord confirms God’s covenant.

God made a covenant with Abraham to make him a personal, national, and universal blessing (Genesis 12:1-3). In the process of giving these promises, God cut an unconditional covenant with Abraham (Genesis 15:8-21). Later, when Abraham was called upon to sacrifice the promised son, Isaac, the Angel of the Lord confirmed this covenant with him (Genesis 22:11-18). Jesus Christ was sent to confirm the new covenant of deliverance and forgiveness of sins.

-The Angel of the Lord gives revelation.

The Angel of the Lord revealed the birth of Samson to Manoah and his wife (Judges 13). The entire book of Revelation is the “Revelation of Jesus Christ” which was written to show Believers what will happen in the end-times.

-The Angel of the Lord commissions God's servants.

The Angel of the Lord commissioned Moses (Exodus 3:7-8); Gideon (Judges 6:11-23); Samson (Judges 13:1-21); and Isaiah (Isaiah 6). Likewise, Jesus commissioned His disciples:

Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen. (Matthew 28:19-20)

Then said Jesus to them again, Peace be unto you: as my Father hath sent me, even so send I you. (John 20:21)

-The Angel of the Lord protects and delivers.

The Old Testament Psalmist declared:

The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them. (Psalm 34:7)

There shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling. For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. (Psalm 91:10-12)

The New Testament proclaims a similar promise from Jesus:

... for he hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee. So that we may boldly say, The Lord is my helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me. (Hebrews 13:5)

The Angel of the Lord brought the message of deliverance to God people in Old Testament times. Jesus brings this same message:

Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved. In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace...(Ephesians 1:5-7)

Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. (Hebrews 2:14-15)

For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. (Romans 8:2)

-The Angel of the Lord leads God's army.

The Captain of the hosts of God appeared to Joshua and promised him victory (Joshua 5:13-15.) Jesus is the Captain of the heavenly hosts who leads God's people to victory over the enemy as we stand strong in Him:

Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints. (Ephesians 6:10-18)

In the end-times, Jesus will lead the hosts of the army of God in final battle (Revelation 16:12-16).

-The Angel of the Lord represents God.

The Angel of His Presence who accompanied Israel in their wilderness trek represented God to Israel:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. (Isaiah 63:9)

The Angel of the Lord disclosed God's glory, as did Jesus:

And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth... No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him. (John 1:14,18)

Christ's mission was to manifest God to mankind:

Thomas saith unto him, Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way? Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the

Father, but by me. If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him. Philip saith unto him, Lord, shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us. Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Shew us the Father? Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works. Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works' sake. (John 14:5-11)

-The Angel of the Lord calls people to spiritual commitment.

The Angel of the Lord called Jacob to faith in God (Genesis 31:11-13). He gave him a new name and left him with a new walk, symbolic of what the Lord does for Believers (Genesis 32:24-32).

One of the ministries of Jesus is to call people to spiritual commitment. He called His disciples from fishing and tax collecting to follow Him. He called Peter to walk on water and feed His sheep. He called Zachias to come down from the tree, and Lazarus to come out of the tomb. He challenged people to total commitment saying...

He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me. He that findeth his life shall lose it: and he that loseth his life for my sake shall find it. (Matthew 10:37-39)

Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls. For my yoke is easy, and my burden is light. (Matthew 11:28-30)

-The Angel of the Lord redeems.

Jacob spoke of the Angel which redeemed him from all evil (Genesis 48:15-16). The Angel of the Lord redeemed Israel (Isaiah 63:9). Jesus is our redeemer:

Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers; But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot: Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you, Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God. (1 Peter 1:18-21)

-The Angel of the Lord guides.

The Angel of the Lord promised to guide Israel to their destination of the Promised Land. Jesus promised to guide us into all truth:

Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come. (John 16:13)

If you follow the guidance of the Lord, you will safely make it to your spiritual destination in this life and in eternity.

-The Angel of the Lord comforts.

The Angel of the Lord ministered comfort to Hagar (Genesis 16:7-13). Jesus said:

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised...(Luke 4:18)

When Jesus departed for Heaven, He promised to send the Holy Spirit as our Comforter:

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you. (John 14:16-18)

Acts 2 describes this event.

-The Angel of the Lord provides.

Divine provision was made for Hagar and her son in the wilderness (Genesis 16:7-13; 21:14-19). Jesus said:

Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. Or what man is there of you, whom if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him? (Matthew 7:7-11)

The Apostle Paul confirmed:

But my God shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus. (Philippians 4:19)

-The Angel of the Lord is an advocate and intercessor.

Zechariah pictures the Angel of the Lord as an advocate before God, defending His people against the accusations of Satan. (Zechariah 3:1-17). Jesus is our advocate, defending us before God on the basis of our position in Him.

Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them. (Hebrews 7:25)

Jesus is our mediator:

For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus... (1 Timothy 2:5)

THE IMPORTANCE

Why is it important for you to understand Biblical teaching regarding the Angel of the Lord?

First, it reveals that Jesus existed before His earthly ministry as recorded in the New Testament. His existence and ministry did not start at birth (John 1:2; 8:58; 17:5,24).

Second, it assures that there was forgiveness of sins in Old Testament times:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. (Isaiah 63:9)

They were saved by looking forward to the cross, their belief being expressed each time they sacrificed. We are saved by looking back on the final sacrifice of Jesus Christ at the cross.

Third, the closing message of the Old Testament which references the Angel of the Covenant, our Lord Jesus Christ, predicts His New Testament coming:

Behold, I send My messenger, and he shall prepare the way before Me. And the Lord [the Messiah], Whom you seek, will suddenly come to His temple; the Messenger or Angel of the covenant, Whom you desire, behold, He shall come, says the Lord of hosts. (Malachi 3:1, TAB).

Fourth, by understanding the ministry of the Angel of the Lord you can better understand the ministry of Jesus to you as a Believer. As He ministered to those in Old Testament times, so He will minister to you. Jesus came and walked among us. He died for our sins and rose again. The Angel of the Lord. Emmanuel: God with us (Matthew 1:23; 1 Timothy 3:16; 1 John 1:1-2).

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. List the names of the Angel of the Lord.

3. Summarize the doctrine of the Trinity of God.

4. Discuss appearances of the Angel of the Lord to:

-Hagar_____

-Abraham_____

-Jacob_____

-Moses_____

-The nation of Israel_____

-Joshua_____

-Gideon_____

-Manoah and his wife_____

-Three Hebrew men_____

-The Prophet Zechariah_____

5. Summarize the ministries of the Angel of the Lord to Believers.

6. Why is it important to have an understanding of the Angel of the Lord?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER SEVEN

ANGELS IN THE LIFE OF JESUS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Summarize the ministry of angels in the life of Jesus.
- Summarize the teachings of Jesus regarding angels.

KEY VERSE:

And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him. (Mark 1:13)

INTRODUCTION

This chapter concerns the ministry of angels in the life of Jesus Christ as recorded in the New Testament books of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. Angels were active during Christ's ministry while He was on earth and He revealed many truths in His teaching regarding them.

THE MINISTRY OF ANGELS TO JESUS

-An angel announced the birth of Christ's forerunner.

And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense. And when Zacharias saw him, he was troubled, and fear fell upon him. But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John. And thou shalt have joy and gladness; and many shall rejoice at his birth. For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb. And many of the children of Israel shall he turn to the Lord their God. And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord. And Zacharias said unto the angel, Whereby shall I know this? for I am an old man, and my wife well stricken in years. And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent to speak unto thee, and to shew thee these glad tidings. And, behold, thou shalt be dumb, and not able to speak, until the day that these things shall be performed, because thou believest not my words, which shall be fulfilled in their season. (Luke 1:11-20)

-An angel announced the birth of Jesus to Mary.

And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth, To a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin's name was Mary. And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women. And when she saw him, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be. And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end. Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man? And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God. And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she hath also conceived a son in her old age: and this is the sixth month with her, who was called barren. For with God nothing shall be impossible. And Mary said, Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. And the angel departed from her. (Luke 1:26-38)

-An angel announced the birth of Jesus to Joseph.

But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost. And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins... Then Joseph being raised from sleep did as the angel of the Lord had bidden him, and took unto him his wife. (Matthew 1:20-21,24)

-An angel named Jesus before He was conceived.

And when eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child, his name was called JESUS, which was so named of the angel before he was conceived in the womb. (Luke 2:21)

-Angels announced the birth of Jesus to the shepherds.

And there were in the same country shepherds abiding in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night. And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid. And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord. And this shall be a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes,

lying in a manger. And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying, Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men. And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another, Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing which is come to pass, which the Lord hath made known unto us. (Luke 2:8-15)

-An angel directed Christ's family to and from Egypt.

And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him... But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appeareth in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, Saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and go into the land of Israel: for they are dead which sought the young child's life. (Matthew 2:13, 19-20)

-Angels ministered to Jesus during His temptation.

And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him. (Mark 1:13)

Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him. (Matthew 4:11)

-An angel stirred the waters of Bethesda.

For an angel went down at a certain season into the pool, and troubled the water: whosoever then first after the troubling of the water stepped in was made whole of whatsoever disease he had. (John 5:4)

The mission of this angel prepared the lame man to receive healing from Jesus.

-Angels sustained Jesus in Gethsemane.

And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him. And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground. And when he rose up from prayer, and was come to his disciples, he found them sleeping for sorrow...(Luke 22:43-45)

The disciples slept during Christ's darkest hour. When others fail you, the angels are there to minister to you.

-Angels were available to Jesus at the time of His suffering.

These powerful beings stood by, ready to assist Jesus when He faced the agony of a painful death. Jesus said, "*Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels? But how then shall the Scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?*" (Matthew 26:53). One legion was 6,000 soldiers, so twelve legions would be 72,000 angels.

-An angel rolled away the stone at Christ's tomb and announced His resurrection.

And, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow: And for fear of him the keepers did shake, and became as dead men. (Matthew 28:2-4)

Yea, and certain women also of our company made us astonished, which were early at the sepulchre; And when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which said that he was alive. (Luke 24:22-23)

-An angel revealed Jesus to Mary Magdalene.

But Mary stood without at the sepulchre weeping: and as she wept, she stooped down, and looked into the sepulchre, And seeth two angels in white sitting, the one at the head, and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. And they say unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? She saith unto them, Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him. And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus. Jesus saith unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou? She, supposing him to be the gardener, saith unto him, Sir, if thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him, and I will take him away. Jesus saith unto her, Mary. She turned herself, and saith unto him, Rabboni; which is to say, Master. (John 20:11-16)

-Angels were with Jesus at His ascension.

And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight. And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel; Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven. (Acts 1:9-11)

Most likely, it was the angels who carried Jesus up to Heaven:

And he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them. And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up into

heaven. And they worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem with great joy: And were continually in the temple, praising and blessing God. Amen. (Luke 24:50-53)

-Angels will be active in the future ministry of Jesus.

As you will learn when you study angels in the Epistles and Revelation, angels will accompany Jesus upon His return to earth, they will reap the final harvest, they will divide the good from the evil, and they will help carry out judgments (Matthew 13:41,49).

THE TEACHING OF JESUS ABOUT ANGELS

-Jesus revealed that the angels ascend and descend through Him.

The ladder Jacob saw in his dream (Genesis 28:12) is Jesus Christ, through whom angels come and go to perform their ministries:

And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man. (John 1:51)

-Jesus said that angels rejoice over sinners who repent.

Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth. (Luke 15:10)

-Jesus revealed that angels represent children before the Father.

Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven. (Matthew 18:10)

-Jesus taught that angels do not marry or procreate.

But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage...(Luke 20:35)

For when they shall rise from the dead, they neither marry, nor are given in marriage; but are as the angels which are in heaven. (Mark 12:25)

For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven. (Matthew 22:30)

-Jesus taught that angels do not die.

But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage: Neither can they die any more: for

they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection. (Luke 20:35-36)

-Jesus revealed that angels have access to the presence of God.

...In Heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in Heaven. (Matthew 18:10)

-Jesus revealed that angels attend Believers at the time of death.

Physical death is the result of mankind's sin (Genesis 3). It is the separation of the spirit and soul from the body (James 2:26). As Believers, we do not need to fear death (Hebrews 2:15). Because Jesus overcame death, we are no longer subject to its finality. The death of Believers is precious to God (Psalm 116:15; Revelation 14:13; Philippians 1:21). In Luke 16, Jesus told a story about a rich man and a beggar, revealing that the beggar who knew the Lord was escorted to paradise by angels. The angels were not just with him at the time of death, but they carried him into Paradise. The Bible states that Satan is the prince of the power of the air. Perhaps angels are sent to safely escort Believers through his territory.

-Jesus taught that the angels do not know the exact time of His return.

But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only. (Matthew 24:36)

But of that day and that hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father. (Mark 13:32)

-Jesus taught that angels will come with Him when He returns.

When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory: (Matthew 25:31)

For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works. (Matthew 16:27)

-Jesus taught that angels will reap the final harvest.

The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world. (Matthew 13:39-40)

-Jesus revealed that angels will gather the elect.

Jesus said that in the end-times, angels would gather the elect of God from the earth (Matthew 24:31). The elect of God does not mean that God chooses some people to go to hell and others

to heaven. It means that God foreknew those would love and serve Him. They are His elect.

*And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.
(Matthew 24:31)*

And then shall he send his angels, and shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven. (Mark 13:27)

-Jesus said that angels will divide the wicked from the righteous.

The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity...So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just...(Matthew 13:41,49),

-Jesus said He would acknowledge Believers before the angels.

Also I say unto you, Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of man also confess before the angels of God: But he that denieth me before men shall be denied before the angels of God. (Luke 12:8-9)

Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels. (Mark 8:38)

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Using the follow Scriptures, summarize what you learned about the ministry of angels in the life of Jesus:

Luke 1:11-20

Luke 1:26-38

Matthew 1:20-21,24

Luke 2:21

Luke 2:8-15

Matthew 2:13, 19-20

Mark 1:13

Matthew 4:11

John 5:4

Luke 22:43-45

Matthew 26:53

Matthew 28:2-4 and Luke 24:22-23

John 20:11-16

Acts 1:9-11

Luke 24:50-53

Matthew 13:41,49

3. Using the following verses, summarize the teaching of Jesus on angels.

John 1:51

Luke 15:10

Matthew 18:10

Luke 20:35; Mark 12:25; Matthew 22:30

Luke 20:35-36

Matthew 18:10

Luke 16

Matthew 24:36 and Mark 13:32

Matthew 25:31 and 16:27

Matthew 13:39-40

Matthew 24:31 and Mark 13:27

Matthew 13:41,49

Luke 12:8-9 and Mark 8:38

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER EIGHT

ANGELS IN THE BOOK OF ACTS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to summarize the ministry of angels in the book of Acts.

KEY VERSES:

For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve, Saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Caesar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee. Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer: for I believe God, that it shall be even as it was told me. (Acts 27:23-25)

INTRODUCTION

Some people claim that the ministry of angels on earth ceased after the coming of the Holy Spirit, an event which is recorded in Acts 2. The book of Acts refutes this. The Holy Spirit is not a substitute for angels. For a detailed study of His ministry, see *The Ministry Of The Holy Spirit* available free at <http://www.harvestime.org>

This chapter summarizes the ministry of angels during the time of the early church as recorded in the book of Acts.

ANGELIC ACTIVITY

-An angel delivered the disciples from prison.

And Believers were the more added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women.) Insomuch that they brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid them on beds and couches, that at the least the shadow of Peter passing by might overshadow some of them. There came also a multitude out of the cities round about unto Jerusalem, bringing sick folks, and them which were vexed with unclean spirits: and they were healed every one. Then the high priest rose up, and all they that were with him, (which is the sect of the Sadducees,) and were filled with indignation, And laid their hands on the apostles, and put them in the common prison. But the angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors, and brought them forth, and said, Go, stand and speak in the temple to the people all the words of this life. And when they heard that, they entered into the temple early in the morning, and taught. But the high priest came, and they that were with him, and called the council together, and all the senate of the children of Israel and sent to the prison to have them brought. But when the officers came, and found them not in the

prison, they returned, and told, Saying, The prison truly found we shut with all safety, and the keepers standing without before the doors: but when we had opened, we found no man within. Now when the high priest and the captain of the temple and the chief priests heard these things, they doubted of them whereunto this would grow. Then came one and told them, saying, Behold, the men whom ye put in prison are standing in the temple, and teaching the people. (Acts 5:14-25)

The angel delivered the disciples from prison and gave them a new mandate for ministry: “Go, stand and speak in the temple to the people all the words of this life.” The disciples obeyed, were subsequently called before the council and the high priest, and gave a powerful witness to the Gospel.

-Angels were mentioned by Stephen.

In his last message prior to his martyrdom, Stephen recounts the appearance of the angel to Moses:

And when forty years were expired, there appeared to him in the wilderness of mount Sina an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush. When Moses saw it, he wondered at the sight: and as he drew near to behold it, the voice of the Lord came unto him, Saying, I am the God of thy fathers, the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. Then Moses trembled, and durst not behold. Then said the Lord to him, Put off thy shoes from thy feet: for the place where thou standest is holy ground. I have seen, I have seen the affliction of my people which is in Egypt, and I have heard their groaning, and am come down to deliver them. And now come, I will send thee into Egypt. This Moses whom they refused, saying, Who made thee a ruler and a judge? the same did God send to be a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush. (Acts 7:30-35)

In Acts 7:38 and 53, Stephen also notes that angels had a role in delivering the Law of Moses.

-An angel directed Philip’s evangelistic ministry.

And the angel of the Lord spake unto Philip, saying, Arise, and go toward the south unto the way that goeth down from Jerusalem unto Gaza, which is desert. And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship, Was returning, and sitting in his chariot read Esaias the prophet. Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot. (Acts 8:26-29)

The angel directed Philip to go into the desert, then the Holy Spirit told him to join himself to the Ethiopian. This reveals how angels and the Holy Spirit function together in accomplishing God’s purposes. As a result of this encounter, the seeking Ethiopian was saved and baptized in water. It is believed that he is responsible to taking the Gospel to the continent of Africa upon his return home.

-An angel directed Cornelius to send for Peter.

There was a certain man in Caesarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian band, A devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God alway. He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius. And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God. And now send men to Joppa, and call for one Simon, whose surname is Peter: He lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side: he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do. And when the angel which spake unto Cornelius was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a devout soldier of them that waited on him continually; And when he had declared all these things unto them, he sent them to Joppa. (Acts 10:1-8) (Also recounted in Acts 11).

Cornelius was a productive man, a good man, a religious man, and a generous man--but he did not know the Lord as Savior. You may be a good, productive, religious and generous person and even live a moral life, but you still need salvation through Jesus!

While Cornelius was talking with the angel and dispatching his servants, Peter had a vision preparing him to go to minister to these Gentiles. Note that in Peter's message to the household of Cornelius there was no call for response, no soft music, no strong appeal--none of the things we sometimes think necessary in order for people to respond to the Gospel. The Word of God was sufficient. The entire household was saved, baptized in water, and filled with the Holy Spirit (Acts 10:9-48). When you are God-directed, Spirit-empowered, and have the assistance of angels, you do not have to strive to "make things happen" in ministry. Whenever you have a "divine appointment" like this one, it very well may have been orchestrated by angels even though you were unaware of their activity.

-An angel delivered Peter from prison.

Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth his hands to vex certain of the church. And he killed James the brother of John with the sword. And because he saw it pleased the Jews, he proceeded further to take Peter also. (Then were the days of unleavened bread.) And when he had apprehended him, he put him in prison, and delivered him to four quaternions of soldiers to keep him; intending after Easter to bring him forth to the people. Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing of the church unto God for him. And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door kept the prison. And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon him, and a light shined in the prison: and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from his hands. And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals. And so he did. And he saith unto him, Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me. And he went out, and followed him; and wist not that

it was true which was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision. When they were past the first and the second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth unto the city; which opened to them of his own accord: and they went out, and passed on through one street; and forthwith the angel departed from him. And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from all the expectation of the people of the Jews. And when he had considered the thing, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, whose surname was Mark; where many were gathered together praying. And as Peter knocked at the door of the gate, a damsel came to hearken, named Rhoda. And when she knew Peter's voice, she opened not the gate for gladness, but ran in, and told how Peter stood before the gate. And they said unto her, Thou art mad. But she constantly affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, It is his angel (thinking he was dead and it was his spirit). But Peter continued knocking: and when they had opened the door, and saw him, they were astonished. But he, beckoning unto them with the hand to hold their peace, declared unto them how the Lord had brought him out of the prison. And he said, Go shew these things unto James, and to the brethren. And he departed, and went into another place. (Acts 12:1-17)

James died in prison. Peter was delivered. What made the difference? James' ministry was concluded. Peter's was just beginning. This incident also confirms the power of prayer to God which results in the release of ministering angels.

-An angel brought judgment on wicked Herod.

And upon a set day Herod, arrayed in royal apparel, sat upon his throne, and made an oration unto them. And the people gave a shout, saying, It is the voice of a god, and not of a man. And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not God the glory: and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost. (Acts 12:21-23)

This angel was used to bring judgment. As you will learn on Chapter Ten, angels will play a major role in the execution of God's judgment in the end-times (Revelation).

-An angel encouraged Paul during the storm.

The Apostle Paul was on a ship being tossed around in the sea by a ferocious storm. Despite the crew's best attempts, it seemed as if the vessel was doomed...

...But after long abstinence Paul stood forth in the midst of them, and said, Sirs, ye should have hearkened unto me, and not have loosed from Crete, and to have gained this harm and loss. And now I exhort you to be of good cheer: for there shall be no loss of any man's life among you, but of the ship. For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve, Saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Caesar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee. Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer: for I believe God, that it shall be even as it was told me. (Acts 27:21-25)

Paul was encouraged by an angel, shared that encouragement with others, and every person on board the ship was saved.

THE BOOK OF ACTS CONTINUES

The Acts of the Holy Spirit through the disciples did not cease with the final pages of the book of Acts. The Trinity of God continues to work in and through Believers. And part of that miraculous work is the ministry of angels to and through His people.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verses.

2. Using the following Scriptures, summarize the ministry of angels in the book of Acts.

-Acts 5:14-25

-Acts 7:30-35; 7:38 and 53

-Acts 8:26-29

-Acts 10:1-8

-Acts 12:1-17

-Acts 12:21-23

-Acts 27:21-25

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER NINE

ANGELS IN THE EPISTLES

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Summarize what is taught in the Epistles concerning angels.
- Discuss the position of angels in relation to Jesus Christ.

KEY VERSE:

And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory. (1 Timothy 3:16)

INTRODUCTION

The Epistles are letters written by early Church leaders under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit and are preserved as part of the New Testament. They extend from the book of Romans through Jude. Thirteen were written by the Apostle Paul and are known as the “Pauline Epistles.” The remainder are called “General Epistles”. Their authors are James, Peter, John, and Jude. The author of Hebrews is unknown, but many theologians credit it to Paul.

There is one reference in the Epistles that confirms that the evil angels will be judged (2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6). This chapter focuses on the remaining references in the Epistles which pertain to the good angels of God.

THE REVELATION OF THE EPISTLES

The Epistles reveal that...

-Angels were created by God.

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him: And he is before all things, and by him all things consist. (Colossians 1:16-17)

-Angels can be impersonated by Satan.

And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. (2 Corinthians 11:14)

-Angelic messages must be in harmony with the Gospel.

But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. (Galatians 1:8)

-Angels transmitted the Old Testament law.

Who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept it. (Acts 7:53)

For if the word spoken by angels was stedfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward; How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him; God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will? (Hebrews 2:2-4)

Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator. (Galatians 3:19)

-Angels cannot separate you from God's love.

For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Romans 8:38-39)

-Angels have a special language.

Paul speaks of the “tongues of angels” (1 Corinthians 13:1) and states that when he was caught up into heaven, he heard “inexpressible words”—assumed to be the language of angels (2 Corinthians 12:4).

-Angels observe Believers.

For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men. (1 Corinthians 4:9)

-Angels are not to be worshipped.

Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind... (Colossians 2:18)

-Angels verify the deity of Jesus Christ.

And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory. (1 Timothy 3:16)

Angels saw Jesus manifested in the flesh.

-Angels are classified as either elect or fallen.

Elect are those who love and serve God. Fallen angels are those who joined in Satan's rebellion.

I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality. (1 Timothy 5:21)

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment...(2 Peter 2:4)

-Angels desire to look into the things that pertain to salvation.

Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into. (1 Peter 1:12)

-Angels can appear unrecognized.

Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares. (Hebrews 13:2)

-Angels will be judged by Believers.

Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life? (1 Corinthians 6:3)

-Angels do not exceed their authority.

Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord. (2 Peter 2:11)

-Angels will return with Jesus.

And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels... (2 Thessalonians 1:7)

-Angels are innumerable.

But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels... (Hebrews 12:22)

-Angels minister to Believers.

And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire. (Hebrews 1:7)

But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool? Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation? (Hebrews 1:13-14)

All true Believers are the heirs of salvation and recipients of ministry by angels.

ANGELS AND JESUS CHRIST

The Epistles reveal that Jesus Christ is superior to the angels. After His resurrection, Jesus went “...into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him” (1 Peter 3:22). When God raised Christ from the dead, He “...set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places, Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.” (Ephesians 1:20-23)

The book of Hebrews was written to Jews to convince them that Christ is superior to Moses, to Aaron, and to the angels. The reason it was necessary to address this issue was because angels were held in high regards by Jews. The angels gave them the Law through Moses and guided them through 40 years of travel through the wilderness. Angels ministered to Abraham, Jacob, Joshua, and Elijah and Jews were familiar with the decorative carvings and curtains of Cherubim in the tabernacle and temple.

The writer of Hebrews confirmed that Jesus is greater than angels because:

-Jesus has a more excellent name than angels:

Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my

Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? (Hebrews 1:4-5)

-The angels worship Him:

And again, when he bringeth in the first begotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him. (Hebrews 1:6.)

-Angels were created do His will:

And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire. (Hebrews 1:7)

-Jesus has a greater position and anointing than the angels:

But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. (Hebrews 1:8-9)

-Jesus is eternal—He always existed while angels were created:

And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands: They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment; And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail. (Hebrews 1:10-12)

-Angels are the servants of God, while Jesus is the Son of God:

But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool? Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation? (Hebrews 1:14)

-Angels have an assigned position in God's hierarchy because all things are subject to Christ:

Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands: Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him. But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man. (Hebrews 2:7-9)

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Summarize what you learned about the angels in the Epistles in regards to:

-Their creation._____

-Dangers of impersonation._____

-Their messages._____

-The transmission of Old Testament law._____

-The love of God._____

-Their language._____

-Their observations._____

-Their worship._____

-The deity of Christ. _____

-Their classification. _____

-Their desire. _____

-Their appearances. _____

-The future judgment. _____

-Their authority. _____

-Their role in Christ's return. _____

-Their number. _____

-Their ministry to Believers. _____

3. Use the following Scriptures to explain the position of angels in relation to Christ.

1 Peter 3:22 _____

Ephesians 1:20-23 _____

Hebrews 1:4-5_____

Hebrews 1:6_____

Hebrews 1:7_____

Hebrews 1:8-9_____

Hebrews 1:10-12_____

Hebrews 1:14_____

Hebrews 2:7-9_____

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER TEN

ANGELS IN THE REVELATION

PART ONE: THEIR WORK

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Summarize how the book of Revelation was given, to whom it was given, and for what purpose.
- Discuss what the book of Revelation teaches regarding:
 - The present work of angels.
 - The future work of angels.
 - The last recorded acts of angels in the book of Revelation.

KEY VERSES:

The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John: Who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw. (Revelation 2:1-2)

INTRODUCTION

This chapter concerns the work of angels in the book of Revelation. The next chapter deals with worship by angels as witnessed by John and recorded in the book of Revelation.

The Bible says that iniquity will increase in the end times (Matthew 24:12). As demonic activity increases, it is reasonable to conclude that angelic activity will also increase. We certainly see the angels active in the book of Revelation.

The book of Revelation was written by the Apostle John under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit. Jesus sent his own personal angel to interpret the vision given to John to reveal the events that were to occur in the end-times:

The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John: Who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw. (Revelation 2:1-2)

At the conclusion of this great vision of the future, John is so overwhelmed by what he has heard and seen that he falls before the angel to worship:

And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things. Then saith he unto me, See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God. (Revelation 22:8-9)

The angel told John not to worship him. "Worship God," he commands--and that is the command we must remember as we reflect on the amazing ministries of angels.

Some angels seen in John's vision are described as being clothed in pure white linen with their breasts girded with golden girdles (Revelation 15:6); one as being clothed with a cloud, with a rainbow on his head, and a face that looked like the sun, and feet like pillars of fire (Revelation 10:1); others appearing as Seraphim and Cherubim (Revelation 4:6-11). All are powerful spiritual beings on divine assignment from God. The discussion of angelic activity in Revelation definitely eliminates any ideas of them being little, fat, cute cherubs!

THE PRESENT MINISTRY OF ANGELS

-Angels are assigned to the church.

The first vision John received was of seven golden candlesticks, with Jesus in the middle holding seven stars. The interpretation of the vision is given in the latter part of Revelation chapter 1:

The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:20)

Revelation chapters 2-3 contain a prophetic message to the churches. It is reasonable to conclude that if each of the churches of that time had an angel, then there are angels assigned to churches in modern times.

-Angels observe us from heaven.

In previous lessons, we learned that angels observe men on earth. They marvel at the grace of God and are curious to learn more about the work of salvation:

Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into. (1 Peter 1:12)

Angels rejoice anytime someone repents from sin. This confirms that they are watching us. How else could they rejoice over salvations?

Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth. (Luke 15:10).

Angels observe our work for God. The Apostle Paul told Timothy:

I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality. (1 Timothy 5:21)

For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men. (1 Corinthians 4:9)

Angels also observe the manifestation of God's wisdom as demonstrated by the Church.

And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ: To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God, According to the eternal purpose which he purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ephesians 3:9-11)

Observation by angels continues in the book of Revelation as they witness and participate in the end-time events on earth.

-Angels receive the prayers of God's people.

And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. (Revelation 5:8)

And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angel's hand. And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast it into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake. (Revelation 8:3-5)

-Angels are attendants at God's throne.

The Prophet Daniel describes the throne room in vivid detail:

I behold till thrones were placed, and the Ancient of Days sat: His garment was white as snow, and the hair of His head like clean wool: His throne like flames of fire: the wheels of it like a burning fire. A swift stream of fire issued forth from before Him: thousands of thousands ministered to Him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before Him: the judgment sat and the books were opened. (Daniel 7:9-10)

The thousands and thousands ministering before the throne include angels. Isaiah adds to this description: 6:1-7

In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphims (angels): each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. (Isaiah 6:1-7)

The book of Revelation provides the most information on the activities of angels in the throne room of God in several vivid narratives:

And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and one sat on the throne. And he that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and there was a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald. And round about the throne were four and twenty seats: and upon the seats I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold. And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunderings and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God. And before the throne there was a sea of glass like unto crystal: and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts full of eyes before and behind. And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a flying eagle. And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever, The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created. (Revelation 4:2-11)

And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals. And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof? And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look thereon. And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon. And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose

the seven seals thereof. And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth. And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne. And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth. And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing. And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever. And the four beasts said, Amen. And the four and twenty elders fell down and worshipped him that liveth for ever and ever. (Revelation 5:1-14)

After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen. (Revelation 7:9-12)

And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. (Revelation 8:3)

And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done. (Revelation 16:17)

And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia. And a voice came out of the throne, saying, Praise our God, all ye his servants, and ye that fear him, both small and great. (Revelation 19:4-5)

In Revelation chapter 22 we are given an final glimpse of the throne of God by our angelic host:

And he (the angel) shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb. In the midst of the street of it, and on either

side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever. (Revelation 22:1-5)

-Angels worship God.

The book of Revelation is punctuated with amazing times of worship. The worship of God by the angels will be discussed in Chapter Eleven of this study.

THE FUTURE MINISTRY OF ANGELS

The book of Revelation reveals that in the end-times...

-Angels will participate in the return of Jesus.

And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels. (2 Thessalonians 1:7)

Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels. (Mark 8:38)

-Angels will gather and seal the elect.

And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other. (Matthew 24:31)

Jesus said that in the end-times angels would gather the elect of God from the earth (Matthew 24:31). The elect of God does not mean that God chooses some people to go to hell and others to heaven. It means that God foreknew those who would love and serve Him. They are His elect.

-Angels will warn and preach.

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters. (Revelation 14:6-7)

-Angels will control the elements of nature.

*And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding **the four winds of the earth**, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree. And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, Saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads. (Revelation 7:1-3)*

*And another angel came out from the altar, which had **power over fire**; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe. And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God. (Revelation 14:18-19)*

*And I heard the angel **of the waters** say, Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus. (Revelation 16:5)*

-Angels will seal the 144,000.

And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, Saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads. And I heard the number of them which were sealed: and there were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel. (Revelation 7:2-4)

-Angels will separate the wicked from the righteous.

The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked one; The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world. The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear. (Matthew 13:38-43)

-Angels will sound seven trumpets of judgment.

Revelation chapter 6 describes the opening of a book with seven seals. The first six seals represent events that will occur in the closing days of time including the rise of the antichrist, war, famine, pestilence, death, persecution, martyrdom, and signs in the heaven and earth. When the seventh seal is opened, seven angels appear before God and are given seven trumpets to sound. As each angel sounds his trumpet, a different judgment occurs on earth.

The first angel's trumpet: Hail, fire, and blood destroy one-third of the vegetation.

The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up. (Revelation 8:7)

The second angel's trumpet: One third of the sea is turned into blood.

And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood; And the third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:8-9)

The third angel's trumpet: One-third of the water is poisoned.

And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters; And the name of the star is called Wormwood: and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter. (Revelation 8:10-11)

The fourth angel's trumpet: One-third of the sun, moon, and stars are darkened.

And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise. (Revelation 8:12)

As this angel flies in midair, a loud warning is given. Three "woes" are pronounced upon those living upon the earth. These "woes" will occur at the sounding of the remaining three trumpets.

The fifth angel's trumpet: The first woe: Supernatural locust.

And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads. And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man. And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them. And the shapes of the locusts were like unto

horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions. And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months. And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon. One woe is past; and, behold, there come two woes more hereafter. (Revelation 9:1–12)

The sixth angel's trumpet: The second woe. Four angels released with judgments.

And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God, Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates. And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men. And the number of the army of the horsemen were two hundred thousand thousand: and I heard the number of them. And thus I saw the horses in the vision, and them that sat on them, having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone: and the heads of the horses were as the heads of lions; and out of their mouths issued fire and smoke and brimstone. By these three was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which issued out of their mouths. For their power is in their mouth, and in their tails: for their tails were like unto serpents, and had heads, and with them they do hurt. (Revelation 9:13–19)

The seventh angel's trumpet: The third woe. The bowl judgments are announced. These are described in Revelation chapters 15-16.

-Angels will pour out the bowl judgments.

The first angel's bowl:

And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshiped his image. (Revelation 16:2)

The second angel's bowl:

And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man: and every living soul died in the sea. (Revelation 16:3)

The third angel's bowl:

And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became blood. And I heard the angel of the waters say, Thou art righteous, O Lord,

which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus. For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy. And I heard another out of the altar say, Even so, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous are thy judgments. (Revelation 16:4-7)

The fourth angel's bowl:

And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire. And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory. (Revelation 16:8-9)

The fifth angel's bowl:

And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain, And blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds. (Revelation 16:10-11)

The sixth angel's bowl:

And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared. (Revelation 16:12)

The seventh angel's bowl:

And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done. And there were voices, and thunders, and lightning; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great. And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great. (Revelation 16:17-21)

-Angels will cast down Satan.

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the

accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night. (Revelation 12:7-10)

-An angel will preach the Gospel to the nations.

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people. (Revelation 14:6)

-Angels will proclaim the fall of Babylon.

And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory. And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies. And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues. For her sins have reached unto heaven, and God hath remembered her iniquities. (Revelation 18:1-5)

-Angels will participate in the destruction of Babylon.

And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying, Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all. And the voice of harpers, and musicians, and of pipers, and trumpeters, shall be heard no more at all in thee; and no craftsman, of whatsoever craft he be, shall be found any more in thee; and the sound of a millstone shall be heard no more at all in thee; And the light of a candle shall shine no more at all in thee; and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride shall be heard no more at all in thee: for thy merchants were the great men of the earth; for by thy sorceries were all nations deceived. And in her was found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth. (Revelation 18:21-24)

-Angels will pronounce judgment on unbelievers.

Those who refuse to repent during God's judgments and chose to worship the Satanic hierarchy established by Satan are doomed to eternal torment:

And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for

ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. (Revelation 14:9-11)

-Angels will announce and participate in the final harvest.

John said:

And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe. And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped. And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle. And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe. (Revelation 14:15-18)

-Angels will declare the end of time.

John wrote:

And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire: And he had in his hand a little book open: and he set his right foot upon the sea, and his left foot on the earth, And cried with a loud voice, as when a lion roareth: and when he had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices. And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write: and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered, and write them not. And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, And swore by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be time no longer. (Revelation 10:1-6):

-Angels will open the bottomless pit, bind Satan, and cast him in.

John said:

And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season. (Revelation 20:1-3)

-Angels will communicate God's plans and purposes.

As they have done throughout Biblical history, angels are continuously involved in communicating God's plans and purposes in the book of Revelation. Here are some examples:

In Revelation 14:6-13, three angels come flying through the air, each with a message for those who remain on the earth. The first angel proclaims the Gospel to the world, giving mankind a final opportunity to repent and worship the true and living God.

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters. (Revelation 14:6-7)

The second angel announces the coming fall of Babylon--the evil world government, the apostate church, those who have compromised with the world, those who have polluted the church, and those who have perverted the Word of God.

And there followed another angel, saying, Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication. (Revelation 14:8)

The third angel warns about the mark of the beast--the Antichrist--declaring that everyone who receives it will drink of the cup of God's wrath, a symbol of divine judgment. Those who refuse to take the mark of the Antichrist will not be able to buy or sell and will face death, but they will live forever and rejoice around the throne of God:

And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus. And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them. (Revelation 14:9-13)

These three messages from the angels will be proclaimed throughout the earth to warn, to call the lost to repentance, and to prepare people for what is coming.

Three angels give final warnings, but the third angel also bears a message of hope for God's people:

Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus. And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them. (Revelation 14:12-13)

The third angel declares that those who keep the commandments of God and maintain their faith in Jesus are blessed. Saints who die in the Lord will rest from their labors and their works for God will follow them, even in death. The saints have the patience to endure because they keep God's covenants and have declared faith in Jesus Christ.

Throughout the entire book of Revelation, angels are the communicators of God's agenda. The book itself was communicated to John by an angel sent from Jesus (Revelation 1:1-2). The following are other instances recorded in Revelation where angels communicated God's plans and purposes.

And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof? (Revelation 5:2)

And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, Saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads. (Revelation 7:2-3)

And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound! (Revelation 8:13)

And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, And swore by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be time no longer: But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished, as he hath declared to his servants the prophets. (Revelation 10:5-7)

And I went unto the angel, and said unto him, Give me the little book. And he said unto me, Take it, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey. (Revelation 10:9)

And there was given me a reed like unto a rod: and the angel stood, saying, Rise, and measure the temple of God, and the altar, and them that worship therein. But the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months. (Revelation 11:1-2)

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters. And there followed another angel, saying, Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication. And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe. And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped. And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle. And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe. (Revelation 14:6-11,15-18)

And I heard the angel of the waters say, Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus. For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy. And I heard another out of the altar say, Even so, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous are thy judgments. (Revelation 16:5-7)

And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication. (Revelation 17:1-2)

And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns. (Revelation 17:7)

And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying, Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all. (Revelation 18:21)

Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And he

saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God. And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy. (Revelation 19:7-10)

And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God. (Revelation 19:17)

LAST RECORDED ACTS OF ANGELS

The final two chapters of Revelation describe the last acts of angels recorded in the Bible, and these are worthy of meditation and reflection as they provide a secure hope for the future.

-Angels presented the Bride of Christ.

Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And he (the angel) saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God. (Revelation 19:7-9)

-Angels showed the New Jerusalem.

And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful. And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely. He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son. But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death. (Revelation 21;1-8)

-Angels revealed the throne of God and the Lamb.

*And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb. In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.
(Revelation 22:1-5)*

-An angel confirmed the validity of the Revelation.

In the closing verses of Revelation, the angel confirms that all the things John had seen and heard were true. They were not man-made fables, nor were they products of man's natural mind:

And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done... I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star. (Revelation 22:6,16)

-An angel confirmed that Jesus Christ will return.

Not only did the angel confirm the validity of the book of Revelation, he confirmed the return of Jesus:

Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book...And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. (Revelation 22:7, 12-13)

The one who testified of all these things promises in the final verse, "Surely I come quickly" (verse 20). May all true Believers respond as did our dear friend John: "Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus."

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verses.

2. Using the introduction to this chapter and Revelation 1:1-2, summarize how the book of Revelation was given, to whom it was given, and for what purpose.

3. Summarize the following present ministries of angels:

-Angels are assigned to the church. _____

-Angels observe us from heaven. _____

-Angels receive the prayers of God's people. _____

-Angels are attendants at God's throne. _____

-Angels worship God. _____

4. Summarize the following future ministries of angels:

-Angels will participate in the return of Jesus. _____

-Angels will gather and seal the elect. _____

-Angels will warn and preach. _____

-Angels will control the elements of nature. _____

-Angels will seal the 144,000. _____

-Angels will separate the wicked from the righteous. _____

-Angels will sound seven trumpets of judgment. _____

-Angels will pour out the bowl judgments. _____

-Angels will cast down Satan. _____

-Angels will preach the Gospel to the nations. _____

-Angels will proclaim the fall of Babylon. _____

-Angels will participate in the destruction of Babylon. _____

-Angels will pronounce judgment on unbelievers._____

-Angels will announce and participate in the final harvest._____

-Angels will declare the end of time._____

-Angels will open the bottomless pit, bind Satan, and cast him in._____

-Angels will communicate God's plans and purposes._____

5. Summarize the last recorded acts of angels in the book of Revelation.

-Angels presented the Bride of Christ._____

-Angels showed the New Jerusalem._____

-Angels revealed the throne of God and the Lamb._____

-Angels confirmed the validity of the Revelation._____

-Angels confirmed that Jesus Christ will return._____

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER ELEVEN

ANGELS IN THE REVELATION

PART TWO: THEIR WORSHIP

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Define worship.
- Explain what it means to worship in spirit and truth.
- Describe how angels worship.
- Summarize four applicable truths learned from how angels worship.

KEY VERSES:

After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen. (Revelation 7:9-12)

INTRODUCTION

The meaning of the New Testament Greek word most often translated “worship” (proskuneo) is “to fall down before” or “bow down before.” Worship is an attitude of submission, awe, and reverence to God. Worship is an expression of praise and gratitude from the depths of your heart for who God is.

True Believers are to worship “in spirit and in truth” (John 4:23-24). Worshipping in spirit requires being born-again with the Holy Spirit resident within and centering your heart, soul, and spirit on the Lord.

Worshipping in truth is a positive response to the truths of Scripture. To truly worship God, you must understand His attributes and His works--who He is and what He does--and His Word is where He reveals Himself to mankind:

“When you see God as He really is, you will worship Him as He desires to be worshiped. When Moses saw God and worshiped Him, he ended up giving us the Law. When Job saw God and worshiped Him, his whole family was restored to him and he got his second start. When Isaiah saw the Lord high and lifted up, he was inducted into the role of a prophet. When Saul was struck by the holiness of God, he became Paul, the greatest missionary evangelist who ever lived. And when John saw God and fell down before Him as dead, he got up and wrote the book of Revelation...Worship is not a noun; it’s a verb. Worship is your whole life dedicated back to God.” Dr. David Jeremiah

The subject of worship in general is beyond the scope of this study, but we can learn much about worship by observing how the angels worship in some tremendous scenes described in the book of Revelation. That is the subject of this chapter.

IN THE THRONE ROOM OF GOD

From time to time throughout Scripture, we are given a glimpse into the throne room of God. There we will find that...

-Angels worship God because He is worthy: Revelation 4-5.

In the throne room, worship continuously occurs because God is worthy. The Prophet Daniel described the throne room of God in vivid detail:

I behold till thrones were placed, and the Ancient of Days sat: His garment was white as snow, and the hair of His head like clean wool: His throne like flames of fire: the wheels of it like a burning fire. A swift stream of fire issued forth from before Him: thousands of thousands ministered to Him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before Him: the judgment sat and the books were opened. (Daniel 7:9-10)

Isaiah added to this description:

In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar:

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. (Isaiah 6:1-7)

According to the book of Revelation, the Apostle John was caught up in the Spirit into heaven through an open door and entered the throne room of God:

After this I looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said, Come up hither, and I will shew thee things which must be hereafter. And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and one sat on the throne. And He that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and there was a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald. And round about the throne were four and twenty seats: and upon the seats I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold. And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thundering and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God. And before the throne there was a sea of glass like unto crystal... (Revelation 4:1-6a)

Encircling God's throne, John saw a rainbow which glowed like an emerald. The brightly colored hues of the rainbow--emerald green, sapphire blue, and ruby red--all reflected in what John described as a crystal sea of glass spread out before the throne. In front of the throne were seven lamps of fire representing the seven Spirits of God. As John stood there, flashes of lightning shot out from the throne and he heard the roar of thunder.

John's gaze turned from the throne to an even more glorious sight, the One seated on the throne. John did not see a form with a face, arms, and legs. He saw a brilliant light reflecting colors, which he compared to precious jewels. John said: "*And there before me was a throne in heaven with someone sitting on it. And the One who sat there had the appearance of jasper and carnelian*" (Revelation 4:2-3, NIV). The carnelian ("sardine stone" in the King James Version) is a red stone, representing the blood of Jesus Christ.

John saw elders around the throne. The office of elders originated in the Old Testament (Exodus 4:29; 12:21; Numbers 11:25; 1 Kings 8:1). Elders were also leaders in the New Testament Church (Acts 14:23; 15:6). The 24 elders here are not identified, but they may represent the 12 tribes of Israel from the Old Testament and the 12 apostles from the New Testament. Thus, these elders could be symbolic of the people of God in both Old and New Testament times.

Clothed in robes of righteousness and wearing crowns of glory, the twenty-four elders were seated in an exalted position before the throne of God. They are continually before the Lord giving praise, thanksgiving, and offering up the prayers of the saints to God:

The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created. (Revelation 4:10-11)

Worship occurs here to honor God as being worthy as the divine Creator of Heaven and earth.

In a prominent place around the throne, John saw four “beasts”. The original Greek word for “beasts” is translated as “living creatures”, also described as “angels”. These living creatures appeared to Ezekiel in a vision by the river Chebar. He identified them as cherubim who served God. Isaiah saw similar living creatures in a vision and referred to them as seraphim. (See Isaiah 6:1 and Ezekiel 1:1).

...and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts full of eyes before and behind. And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a flying eagle. And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within... (Revelation 4:6-8)

The living creatures in Revelation are described as a lion, a calf (or lamb), a man, and a flying eagle. Each of these creatures reflect one of the attributes of Jesus Christ:

- He is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah--a victor.
- He is the Lamb of God that takes away the sins of the world--our Savior.
- He took on the form of man--deity made flesh.
- He is like a flying eagle--the high places are His habitation.

Concerning these creatures, John writes:

...and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever...The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created. (Revelation 4:6-11)

These angelic beings are pictured as leaders of worship. They do not rest, but offer up praise day and night unto God, saying: “*Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty, who was, and is, and is to come*” (Revelation 4:8, NIV). The focus of their praise is the holiness of God.

At the beginning of Revelation chapter 4, John’s attention was drawn to a book in God’s right hand.

And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals. And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof? And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look

thereon. And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon. (Revelation 5:1-4)

This book was completely sealed. For thousands of years, God's end-time plan remained a mystery. God revealed a portion of it to His prophet, Daniel, but then sealed up the vision (Daniel 12:8-9).

John waits patiently for the book to be opened. Suddenly, a mighty angel appears on the scene and proclaims in a loud voice that echoes throughout all of creation: "*Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof?*" (Revelation 5:2). It is a futile search. No one can be found who is worthy and authorized to open the book and read its contents. The disappointment causes John to weep uncontrollably. As John wept, one of the twenty-four elders stepped forward to comfort him. He told John: "...*Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof...*" (Revelation 5:5). The word "*prevailed*" in this verse means "to overcome" or "to conquer". There was a Conqueror--the Lion of the tribe of Judah--who could open the book. As the Lamb of God that had been slain, Jesus was led to the slaughter and sacrificed. Here He is depicted as the Lion, One who conquered Satan and won the victory over sin, death, and hell. As the mighty Conqueror, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, He alone has the right to open the book and break the seals.

All eyes in heaven were focused intently upon Him. The cherubim, the elders, and thousands of angels surrounding the throne all watched in holy reverence and anticipation. Suddenly, a time of divine worship breaks forth in Heaven:

And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth. And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing. And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever. And the four beasts said, Amen. And the four and twenty elders fell down and worshipped him that liveth for ever and ever. (Revelation 5:8-14)

As Jesus took the scroll from the right hand of God, John witnessed one of the most glorious scenes recorded in the Bible. Tremendous waves of worship and praise swept throughout heaven. First, the living creatures and the elders fell down before the Lamb (Jesus) to worship. The elders each had harps and golden vials--or bowls--full of sweet smelling odors representing the prayers of

the saints. Just think: Your prayers are collected in heaven in bowls and are as sweet-smelling incense before God!

The hosts of Heaven praised Jesus because He was worthy to take the book and open the seals. They worshipped Him because He had provided redemption for every kindred, tongue, people, and nation and established Believers as kings and priests to reign on the earth. The song the elders and the Cherubim sang was a new song because Jesus established a new covenant through His sacrificial death on the cross. Jesus was the Lamb “*slain from the foundation of the world*” (*Revelation 13:8*). Even before the world was spoken into existence, God planned to give His only begotten Son as the perfect sacrifice to redeem mankind out of Satan’s deadly grip.

Next, multitudes of other angels joined in worship, praising Jesus because He was worthy as the Lamb that was slain to receive power, riches, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and blessing. Finally, all of creation joined in worship, saying, “*Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.*” (*Revelation 5:13*). This spectacular worship scene ended as the cherubim cried “Amen” and, once again, the elders fell on their faces and worshipped Him who lives forever and ever.

-Angels worship the Lamb of God: Revelation 7:9-12.

In another worship scene in the Revelation, John described the following:

After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen. (Revelation 7:9-12)

Here, angels and all creation worship the Lamb of God, Jesus Christ, who has taken away the sins of the world.

-Angels worship because of the works, the ways, and the name of God: Revelation 15:1-4.

Before the seven vials of God’s wrath are poured out upon the earth, John witnesses a great victory celebration in heaven. There, before the throne of God on the crystal sea that looked like glass and fire, were thousands of saints who had endured the tribulation and won the victory over the Antichrist. These saints had harps and were singing the song of Moses and the song of the Lamb:

And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God. And they sing the song of Moses the

servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvelous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints. Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? For thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest. (Revelation 15:2-4)

This song is referred to as the “Song of Moses” because it relates back to when God delivered Israel from Egypt and they had a great victory celebration (Exodus 15:1-21). It is also called the Song of the Lamb because just as God supernaturally delivered the children of Israel out of Egypt with mighty signs, wonders, and miracles, He will manifest this same supernatural power to bring us to our Promised Land. He purchased us with the blood of the Lamb and we will pass safely over into our promised land just as the children of Israel did.

-Angels minister in response to worship: Revelation 15:5-8.

The angels cannot participate in this song of worship, as they have not experienced salvation. At the conclusion of this great time of worship however, John saw seven angels, clothed in pure linen with golden sashes across their chests. These seven angels, activated by worship and God’s command, proceeded out of the opened sanctuary to empty their bowls upon the earth, pouring out the final wrath of God upon the wicked:

And after that I looked, and, behold, the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened: And the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and having their breasts girded with golden girdles. And one of the four beasts gave unto the seven angels seven golden vials full of the wrath of God, who liveth for ever and ever. And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God, and from his power; and no man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled. (Revelation 15:5-8)

One of the living creatures gives each of these seven angels a golden vial, bowls full of the wrath of God. As they prepare to pour out these vials of wrath, John sees the temple filled with the smoke of God’s glory. The glory of His holy presence is so great that no one is able to stand or enter into the sanctuary until the seven bowls of His wrath are emptied out.

-Angels worship because of God’s righteous judgments: Revelation 19:1-6.

And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God: For true and righteous are his judgments: for he hath judged the great whore, which did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and hath avenged the blood of his servants at her hand. And again they said, Alleluia. And her smoke rose up for ever and ever. And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia. And a voice came out of the throne, saying, Praise our God, all ye his servants, and ye that fear him, both small and great. And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth. (Revelation 19:1-6)

This passage begins with *"after these things."* After what things? After the judgments that have come upon the earth as described in the previous chapters of Revelation:

- After the four horsemen.
- After the opening of the book with seven seals.
- After the outpouring of the seven trumpet judgments.
- After the outpouring of the seven vials of God's wrath.
- After the thunders sound.
- After the testimony of the witnesses.
- After the destruction of Babylon.

Joining this great multitude in praise and honor for God's righteous judgments are the twenty-four elders and the four living creatures--Cherubim angels--who fall on their faces before God seated on His throne. They cry out, *"Amen, Hallelujah!"* A universal call is made to *"...Praise our God, all you his servants, you who fear him, both small and great!"* (Revelation 19:5, NIV)

Again the heavens resound with the voices of a great multitude. Like the roar of crashing waves of the ocean and loud clashes of thunder, the voices shout, *"...Hallelujah! for our Lord God Almighty reigns..."* (Revelation 19:6, NIV).

The original Greek word for "Almighty" literally means, "one who holds all things in his control." The all-powerful, supernatural One who holds all things in His control is not an impersonal, detached being up in the sky somewhere. He is the Lord of all! Our God is on the throne, He alone is in control, and He is worthy of worship!

-Angels worship at the marriage supper: Revelation 19:7-9.

The glorious praise and worship intensifies as all of Heaven focuses on the greatest celebration of all times, the glorious event that the Church--the Bride of Christ--has long anticipated. The time has come for which Jesus Christ, the Heavenly Bridegroom, has patiently waited. A multitude of voices joyously proclaim that the marriage of the Lamb is at hand:

Let us rejoice and shout for joy exulting and triumphant! Let us celebrate and ascribe to Him glory and honor, for the marriage of the Lamb [at last] has come and His bride has prepared herself. She has been permitted to dress in fine (radiant) linen, dazzling and white--for the fine linen is (signifies, represents) the righteousness (the upright, just, and godly living, deeds, and conduct, and right standing with God) of the saints (God's holy people). Then [the angel] said to me, Write this down: Blessed (happy, to be envied) are those who are summoned (invited, called) to the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he said to me [further], These are the true words (the genuine and exact declarations) of God. (Revelation 19:7-9, AMP)

LEARNING FROM THE ANGELS

There are four major truths evident in how angels worship that are applicable to our own worship of God: The focus, fear, frequency, and freedom of their worship.

-The focus of their worship.

Their focus was on God the Father and the Lamb of God, Jesus Christ. In their worship, angels emphasize His holiness, His provision of salvation, His worthiness, His name, and they honor Him as creator of Heaven and earth. They ascribe to Him power, riches, wisdom, strength, honor, glory and blessing. They praise Him for redeeming all people and nations. They worship Him because He reigns over the nations and because of His righteous judgments.

-The fear of their worship.

The Bible uses the word “fear” at least 300 times in reference to God. To fear God is to regard Him with profound and reverent respect (Exodus 19:10–13; 20:20). The Bible declares:

God is greatly to be feared in the assembly of the saints, and to be had in reverence of all them that are about him. (Psalm 89:7)

Worship by the angels in Revelation is not flippant. It is profoundly respectful of the awesomeness of God. The Bible says: “*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the holy is understanding*” (Proverbs 9:10). If we want to worship wisely and with understanding, then we must develop a wholesome fear of the Lord.

-The frequency of their worship.

In the throne room of God, angels and elders do not cease to cry “Holy, Holy, Holy” (Revelation 4:8). There is continuous worship as books are opened, judgments are poured out, prayers are lifted, and the redeemed are gathered.

-The freedom of their worship.

The angels are uninhibited in their worship. They are liberated in God’s presence. Throughout the book of Revelation there are frequent occasions of spontaneous worship—some loud, some quiet. Outbursts of worship are interruptions that God treasures. In worship scenes described in the book of Revelation, angels are standing, singing, shouting, falling on their faces, lifting their hands, and standing in His presence.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verses.

2. Define worship.

3. What does it mean to worship in Spirit and truth?

4. Summarize the following passages which describe angels' worship.

-Angels worship God because He is worthy: Revelation 4-5.

-Angels worship the Lamb of God: Revelation 7:9-12.

-Angels worship because of the works, the ways, and the name of God: Revelation 15

-Angels minister in response to worship: Revelation 15:5-8.

-Angels worship because of God's righteous judgments: Revelation 19:1-6.

-Angels worship at the marriage supper: Revelation 19:7-9.

5. Summarize four truths about how angels worship that are applicable to your own worship.

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER TWELVE

ANGELS ON ASSIGNMENT: PART ONE

MINISTRY TO BELIEVERS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to summarize the ministries of angels to Believers.

KEY VERSE:

Are not the angels all ministering spirits (servants) sent out in the service [of God for the assistance] of those who are to inherit salvation? (Hebrews 1:14)

INTRODUCTION

Angels were not only active in Old and New Testament times, they are active in our world today. They are sent to minister to those who are the heirs of salvation. Roland Buck comments:

“Angelic beings are continually ministering to people in many ways in these present days. Many seeming coincidences are really angels on the job. We haven’t fully realized God’s use of heavenly hosts to get His job done, because of our limited information concerning angels.”

All true Believers are the heirs of salvation and recipients of ministry by angels. This chapter focuses on their ministry to you. This summary is drawn from the Biblical record of the documented ministries of angels in the Old and New Testaments.

MINSTERING TO GOD’S PEOPLE

Angels minister to Believers by...

-Communicating messages from God.

God communicates in many ways: Through His Word, by speaking directly to man, through the still small voice in one’s spirit, dreams and visions, and through the Holy Spirit. His greatest message, of course, was delivered through His Son, Jesus Christ. Angels are also a means of communication from God to man. They are the messengers of God. The important thing to remember is that it is the message, not the messenger that should be your focus.

-Providing prophetic revelation.

Repeatedly in the books of Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, Revelation and elsewhere in Scripture, angels were sent by God to reveal His plans and purposes. Angels revealed the law to Moses; the births of Isaac, Samson, John the Baptist and Jesus; and provided many other revelations throughout Scripture.

Surely the Lord God will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets. (Amos 3:7)

True spiritual revelation from an angel of God is always in harmony with the Word of God.

-Preparing Believers for ministry.

Angels participated in the calling of Isaiah (Isaiah 6); Ezekiel (Ezekiel 1); Moses (Genesis 3); and Gideon (Judges 6) to ministry. These examples set the precedent that, at God's direction, angels participate in the launching of ministries.

-Ministering during difficult times.

It is reasonable to conclude that as the angels ministered to Jesus during His temptation (Matthew 4:11) and in Gethsemane (Luke 22:43-45), they will also minister to Believers in difficult times.

-Providing strength, encouragement, and comfort.

Angels strengthened Jesus after His temptation (Matthew 4:11. Luke 22:43). They encouraged the apostles to keep preaching after their release from prison (Acts 5:19-20). They told Paul to be of good cheer, that everyone on his ship would survive an impending shipwreck (Acts 27:23-25). Angels are dispatched to you from God with similar messages of encouragement and strength. In the "deserts" of your life, angels will join the Holy Spirit in ministering comfort to you as they did to Hagar (Genesis 21:14-19).

-Providing guidance.

Angels gave instructions to Joseph to flee Egypt (Matthew 2:13-15). They guided Abraham's servant to find a wife for Isaac (Genesis 24:7). They led Cornelius to send for Peter (Acts 10:1-8; 11:13-14). They told the women at the tomb what to do next (Acts 8:26). From these accounts and many others, it is apparent that angels provide guidance. Sometimes that "feeling" that you should or should not do something is the guidance of an angel. Do not be like Balaam who almost lost his life because he ignored the angel sent by God (Numbers 22).

-Giving warnings.

Angels warned of the destruction of Sodom (Genesis 19:1,12-13). They warned Joseph of Herod's evil intentions towards the Christ child (Matthew 2:13). Sometimes that inner caution or feeling you experience is a warning from God delivered to you by an angel.

-Executing judgment.

It is evident throughout Scripture that angels execute judgment on the enemies of Believers. An angel brought judgment in Egypt because of Pharaoh's refusing to set God's people free (Exodus 11). An angel brought judgment on evil King Herod who had persecuted Believers (Acts 12:21-23). In the Revelation, angels are depicted as busily fulfilling God's commands of judgment on the wicked people on earth. Eventually, angels will execute God's judgment on Satan, the enemy of all true Believers:

And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night. (Revelation 12:10)

-Accelerating answers to prayer.

Daniel's prayer to God for revelation was answered by an angel from God who interpreted the prophetic visions he was receiving (Daniel 9:20-27; 10:10-14). Prayer for Peter when he was incarcerated resulted in an angel being dispatched to deliver him from prison (Acts 12:1-17). In the book of Revelation, we see angels offering up the prayers of the saints to God:

And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. (Revelation 5:8)

And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angel's hand. And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast it into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake. (Revelation 8:3-5)

-Interceding for God's people.

An example is when the angel interceded for Jerusalem:

Then the angel of the Lord answered and said, O Lord of hosts, how long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem and on the cities of Judah, against which thou hast had indignation these threescore and ten years? And the Lord answered the angel that talked

with me with good words and comfortable words. (Zechariah 1:12-13)

-Assisting in evangelism.

One of the first cross-cultural ministries of Jews to Gentiles was orchestrated when an angel appeared to Cornelius and told him to send for Peter to come and minister to him and his family (Acts 10:1-6). An angel directed Philip to go into the desert where he met an Ethiopian man who he led to the Lord (Acts 8:26-39). In the end-times, an angel will actually preach the Gospel to the world (Revelation 14:6). The Trinity of God and the angels are all active in your evangelism efforts. You do not minister alone.

-Providing physical needs.

Angels provided food and water for Hagar (Genesis 21:17-20). Angels brought manna to the Israelites in the wilderness (Psalm 78:23-25). An angel prepared food for the tired and distraught Prophet Elijah (1 Kings 19:5-8). Angels can be used by God to provide your needs supernaturally, through others, or through strangers who may be angels unaware (Hebrews 13:2).

-Guarding, protecting, preserving, and delivering God's people.

Angels first protected sinful man from a righteous God by blocking the way back to Eden lest mankind partake of the tree of life and live forever in their sinful state. Angels protected Israel as they fled from Egypt, and traveled with them during their wilderness trek. The testimony of the aged Jacob was that an angel had protected him throughout all his life. Angels protected Daniel in the lions' den, the Hebrew men in the fiery furnace, and Elijah from the an enemy army. Angels delivered the disciples from prison (Acts 5:14-25, 12:1-17).

The angels minister to guard, protect, preserve, and deliver God's people. There have been many modern documented cases of angels appearing and causing a threatening enemy to withdraw. The Scriptures declare:

*The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.
(Psalm 34:7)*

*For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall
bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. (Psalm 91:11-12)*

-Assisting in spiritual warfare.

God's warring angels are innumerable. They protect His people from the pursuing enemy; drive out the enemy; fight for them, and reveal spiritual warfare strategies to them. God's warring angels will overcome all evil enemies in the end-times. See Chapter Fourteen for further discussion.

-Attending Believers at the time of death.

As you learned in Chapter Seven through the story of Lazarus and the rich man, Jesus taught that angels attend Believers at the time of death (Luke 16). A Believer never dies alone, even though he might be separated from family and friends.

-Gathering Believers as part of the elect of God.

Jesus said that in the end-times, angels would gather the elect of God from the earth (Matthew 24:31). The elect of God does not mean that He chooses some people to go to hell and others to heaven. It means that God foreknew those who would love and serve Him. They are His elect.

-Presenting Believers as the Bride of Christ.

When Believers are gathered together to their eternal home, angels will present them as the Bride of Christ. John witnessed this prophetically:

*Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And he (the angel) saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.
(Revelation 19:7-9)*

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Summarize what you learned about the following ministries of angels to Believers.

-Communicating messages from God. _____

-Providing prophetic revelation. _____

-Preparing Believers for ministry. _____

-Ministering during difficult times. _____

-Providing strength, encouragement, and comfort. _____

-Providing guidance. _____

-Giving warnings. _____

-Executing judgment. _____

-Accelerating answers to prayer. _____

-Interceding for God's people. _____

-Assisting in evangelism. _____

-Providing physical needs. _____

-Guarding, protecting, preserving, and delivering God's people. _____

-Assisting in spiritual warfare. _____

-Attending Believers at the time of death. _____

-Gathering Believers as part of the elect of God. _____

-Presenting Believers as the Bride of Christ. _____

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

ANGELS ON ASSIGNMENT: PART TWO

GUARDIAN ANGELS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon conclusion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Define the term "guardian angel."
- List additional Biblical references supporting the belief in guardian angels.
- Summarize additional Scriptural evidence for guardian angels.
- Address the issue regarding guardian angels and tragedies.

KEY VERSES:

For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. (Psalm 91:11-12)

INTRODUCTION

This chapter concerns the subject of guardian angels. Do we each have a guardian angel? Do we have more than one guardian angel? What do the Scriptures say regarding this subject?

DEFINITION

A guardian angel is one that is assigned to protect and guide a particular person, group, kingdom, or country. A guardian angel is not your dead relative watching over you. A guardian angel is one of many angels created by God, dispatched at His will, and given specific assignments.

MAJOR REFERENCES

There are no direct references in the Bible to guardian angels, but the concept is supported by two major passages.

-Jesus said the angels of little children always behold the face of the Father in heaven.

Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven. (Matthew 18:10)

-When Believers were praying for Peter's release from prison, they thought his angel had arrived at the front door instead of Peter himself:

And as Peter knocked at the door of the gate, a damsel came to hearken, named Rhoda. And when she knew Peter's voice, she opened not the gate for gladness, but ran in, and told how Peter stood before the gate. And they said unto her, Thou art mad. But she constantly affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, It is his angel. (Acts 12:13-15)

SUPPORTING EVIDENCE

In addition to the statements regarding the angels of children (Matthew 18:10) and Peter's angel (Acts 12:13-15), the following passages support the belief in guardian angels.

-Scriptures indicate that angels watch over you.

The Bible definitely confirms that angels watch over you:

Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth. (Luke 15:10)

For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men. (1 Corinthians 4:9)

Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, (Hebrews 12:1)

-Jacob's angel redeemed him from evil.

Jacob had several encounters with angels throughout his lifetime, of which you studied in the chapter on Angels In The Old Testament. At the end of his life, while blessing the sons of Joseph, Jacob mentioned the angel which redeemed him from all evil:

The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth. (Genesis 48:16)

Jacob was constantly in and out of trouble during his early years, so this redeeming angel probably was on duty full time.

-Israel had an angel assigned to them.

The Angel of His Presence was with them constantly:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. (Isaiah 63:9)

Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared. For mine Angel shall go before thee, and bring thee in unto the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites: and I will cut them off. (Exodus 3:20,23)

-Angels listen to your words.

In regards to making vows, the Word says:

Suffer not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin; neither say thou before the angel, that it was an error: wherefore should God be angry at thy voice, and destroy the work of thine hands? (Ecclesiastes 5:6)

Angels apparently listen to everything you say, meaning they must be around all the time.

-An angel accompanied Lazarus at his death.

The Bible tells the story of a rich man and a poor afflicted beggar who sat at his gates (Luke 16:19-21).

And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. (Luke 16:22-25)

Not only does this story confirm the existence of an afterlife, but it reveals that Believers are not alone when they die. They are accompanied by angels into eternity. If multiple angels are sent to accompany you at death, it is likely that one or more may accompany you in life also.

-An angel encamps around you.

The Bible confirms that an angel camps around those who fear God:

*The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.
(Psalm 34:7)*

An angel is camping out in this room as these words are being written and is right there with you as these words are being read. The Prophet Elijah and his servant had a whole host of angels camping out around them (1 Kings 6:15-17).

-Angels have charge over you.

The Bible indicates that God gives His angels charge over you:

For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. (Psalm 91:11-12)

Note that this verse “angels” is plural tense. You may have more than one guardian angel.

The Amplified Version states, *"For He will give His angels [especial] charge over you to accompany and defend and preserve you in all your ways [of obedience and service]. They shall bear you up on their hands, lest you dash your foot against a stone."*

The English Standard Version says angels will *"guard you in all your ways"*. The Holman Bible states *"He will give His angels orders concerning you"*. The New International Readers Version says that *"The Lord will command his angels to take good care of you. They will lift you up in their hands. Then you won't trip over a stone."*

The Message Bible says *"If you stumble, they'll catch you; their job is to keep you from falling."* The Wycliff Bible interprets this passage: *"For God hath commanded to his angels of thee; that they keep thee in all thy ways. (For God hath commanded his angels to be all around thee; so that they keep thee safe on all thy ways.) They shall bear thee in the hands; lest peradventure thou hurt thy foot at a stone. (They shall lift thee up with their hands; lest thou hurt thy foot on a stone.)"* If the angels keep you in all of your ways and prevent you from falling, one of them must be on duty at all times.

-The seven churches had angels.

Revelation states that each of the seven churches of Asia had their own angel:

The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:20)

-Michael was assigned as guardian of Israel.

Michael was assigned as the guardian angel of the nation of Israel.

And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people... (Daniel 12:1)

If the nation of Israel has an angel, it is possible that guardian angels are assigned to other nations as well.

-Jesus had a special angel.

Jesus had a special angel to whom He referred as “His angel.” Perhaps this angel was a guardian angel during His earthly ministry? We are not told.

The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John: Who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw. (Revelation 2:1-2)

WHEN TRAGEDY OCCURS

One question that we cannot answer is this: Where are the guardian angels when tragedies occur in the life of a Believer? Why did they not intervene? These are questions the Bible does not address.

It seems evident that there is a point where an angel will withdraw protection if a person indulges in sin and turns from God. For example, after the children of Israel had taken possession of the Promised Land, they served the Lord faithfully for a season. But after the death of Joshua and the elders, the people of Israel began to serve idols. For this reason the angel of the Lord said that he would no longer drive out the inhabitants of the land (Numbers 33:55).

Another example is when the angels brought Lot and his wife out of Sodom before the Lord destroyed it with fire. When Lot's wife turned back to look at Sodom as she was forbidden to do, she was left to her fate (Genesis 19:16-17; Luke 17:31-32).

It also is evident that deliverance from tragedies may have to do with a Believer's mission. Peter was delivered from prison by an angel because his ministry was just beginning. John the Baptist was not delivered. His ministry was concluding.

Since we are not given a specific answer regarding guardian angels in times of tragedies, this is one of the secret things that must be left with the Lord:

The secret things belong unto the Lord our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever... (Deuteronomy 29:29)

JUST REMEMBER....

Whether we each have a guardian angel or a host of them, remember that it is God who watches over you and dispatches the angels in your behalf. Guardian angels are not yours to control. They serve you, but they are not your servants.

Guardian angels are God's servants and are dispatched according to His will and purposes. Their ministries always glorify God, and we should do likewise by thanking Him for their ministry in our behalf. Always remember: God alone is worthy of our worship and praise.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verses.

2. Define the term "guardian angel."

3. List the two major Biblical references supporting the belief in guardian angels.

4. Summarize supporting evidence regarding guardian angels.

Luke 15:10; 1 Corinthians 4:9; Hebrews 12:1_____

Genesis 48:16_____

Isaiah 63:9; Exodus 3:20,23_____

Ecclesiastes 5:6_____

Luke 16:19-25_____

Psalm 34:7_____

Psalm 91:10-11_____

Revelation 1:20_____

Daniel 12:1_____

Revelation 2:1-2_____

5. Address the issue regarding guardian angels and tragedies.

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

ANGELS ON ASSIGNMENT: PART THREE

ANGELS AND SPIRITUAL WARFARE

OBJECTIVES:

- Discuss the natural and spiritual kingdoms.
- Explain why spiritual warfare must be understood with a spiritual mind.
- Define spiritual warfare.
- Explain the multidimensional aspects of spiritual warfare.
- Explain reasons for the spiritual conflict.
- Summarize the activities of God's warring angels.
- Explain why you need not fear spiritual battle.

KEY VERSE:

...Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. (2 Kings 6:16)

INTRODUCTION

There is a great war being waged in the world today. It is not a conflict between nations, tribes, or government leaders. It is not a rebellion or coup. It is an important invisible battle taking place in the spirit world.

The early Church viewed their spiritual experience in terms of warfare. Military terminology is used throughout the New Testament. Protection was seen in the armor of God. The Word of God was compared to a sword. Satan's attacks were called fiery darts. Faith was the "good fight" and Believers were told to "war a good warfare."

One of the tremendous resources in this spiritual battle is the ministry of angels, which is the subject of this chapter. First, let's discuss some basic concepts about the conflict in which we are engaged.

THE NATURAL AND SPIRITUAL REALMS

To understand this invisible war, you must realize that there is both a natural world and a spiritual world. The natural world is that which can be seen, felt, touched, heard, or tasted. It is tangible and visible. The country, nation, city, or village in which you live is part of the natural world. You are a resident in a natural kingdom located on one of the visible continents of the world. You can see the people who are part of your environment and you can communicate with them. You can experience the sights, sounds, and smells around you.

But there is another world in which you live. That world is a spiritual world. You cannot see it with your physical eyes, but it is just as real as the natural world in which you live. Paul speaks of this division of natural and spiritual:

There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body. (1 Corinthians 15:40)

All men have a natural body which lives in the natural world, but man is also a spiritual being with an eternal soul and spirit. Man is body, soul, and spirit. Your spiritual being (soul and spirit) is part of a spiritual world just as your natural body is part of the natural world.

Because spiritual warfare is just that--spiritual--it must be understood with a spiritual mind:

But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him; neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. (2 Corinthians 2:14)

TWO SPIRITUAL KINGDOMS

Within the natural and spiritual realms of which we are speaking there exists separate kingdoms which are ruled by natural and spiritual leaders.

NATURAL KINGDOMS:

All men live in a natural kingdom of this world. They live in a city or village which is part of a nation. That nation is a kingdom of the world that is ruled by a king or political ruler. The Bible speaks of these natural kingdoms as "kingdoms of the world." The kingdoms of the world have come under the power and influence of Satan:

Again, the Devil taketh Him (Jesus) up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth Him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; And saith unto Him, All these things will I give thee, if you wilt fall down and worship me. (Matthew 4:8-9)

John 5:19 sadly reminds us that "*the whole world is under the control of the evil one.*"

SPIRITUAL KINGDOMS:

In addition to the natural kingdoms of this world, there are two spiritual kingdoms: The Kingdom of Satan and the Kingdom Of God. Every person alive is a resident of one of these two kingdoms.

The Kingdom of Satan consists of Satan, spiritual beings called demons, and all men who live in sin and rebellion to God's Word. These, plus the world and your own flesh, are the spiritual forces of evil at work in the world today.

The spiritual battle started in Heaven. You studied previously about Lucifer who was originally a beautiful angel created by God and was part of the Kingdom of God. Lucifer decided he wanted to take over God's Kingdom (Isaiah 14:12-17 and Ezekiel 28:12-19). A group of angels joined Lucifer (now called Satan) in this rebellion. They are now called demons.

Since Satan is not omnipresent (present everywhere), he uses these demons to do his will and accomplish his purposes throughout the world. Demons constitute the "powers of the air" (Ephesians 2:2) and the "powers of darkness" (Colossians 1:13) and are under the control of Satan. Demons follow orders given by their prince, Satan. We can summarize the activities of Satan and demons by noting that they are always directed against God, His plan, and His people.

The Kingdom of God consists of God the Father, Jesus Christ, the Holy Spirit, spiritual beings called angels, and all men who live in righteous obedience to God's Word. These are the spiritual forces of good. Jesus Christ is called the "Lord of hosts", as He is commander of the army of God.

The Kingdom of God is not a denominational church. Denominations are man-made organizations of groups of churches. They have been established for practical purposes of organization and administration. Denominations are major church organizations like Baptist, Assembly of God, Methodist, Lutheran, etc. The Bible speaks of the true Church which is not a denomination or religious organization. The true Church is composed of all those who have become residents of this Kingdom by asking God to forgive their sins and accepting Jesus Christ as Savior.

At the present time in the natural world, the Kingdom of God exists individually within every man, woman, boy, and girl who has made Jesus King of their lives. It exists communally in the true Church and wherever people make this world the kind of place God wants it to be. In the future, there will be an actual visible manifestation of God's Kingdom.

THE INVISIBLE WAR

The invisible spiritual war is a battle which involves all men and women. Because the Kingdom of Satan is a spiritual kingdom...

...we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. (Ephesians 6:12)

Spiritual warfare is not a natural battle between flesh and blood. It is not a battle of man against man. It is an invisible struggle in the spirit world. It is a battle within and around man. It is not a visible battle because spirits are involved and a spirit does not have flesh and bones (Luke 24:39).

Spiritual warfare is "multidimensional," which means it is fought in different dimensions. It is...

- A social battle between the Believer and the world: John 15:18-27.
- A personal battle between the flesh and the spirit: Galatians 5:16-26.
- A supernatural battle between Believers and evil spiritual powers: Ephesians 6:10-27.

Every person alive is engaged in this battle, whether he realizes it or not. There is no neutral ground.

REASONS BEHIND THE CONFLICT

Man was originally created in the image of God and for the glory of God (Genesis 2). The invisible war against man started with the first temptation in the garden of Eden (Genesis chapter 3). When Adam and Eve sinned, this resulted in all men inheriting the basic sin nature and committing individual acts of sin due to this nature:

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned. (Romans 5:12)

It also resulted in the invisible war between man and the forces of evil:

And I will put enmity between thee (Satan) and the woman (mankind), and between thy seed (the forces of evil) and her seed (the forces of good represented by the Lord Jesus Christ)... (Genesis 3:15)

Because of sin, man was separated from God and condemned to death. But God loved man so much that He made a special plan to save him from sin:

For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. (John 3:16-17)

Through belief in Jesus, confession of and repentance from sin, men and women can be released from the power of the enemy. The death and resurrection of Jesus not only resulted in salvation from sin, it also defeated the enemy, Satan:

...For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8)

But if Satan is defeated, then why does the war still rage? Following any war there are always pockets of enemy resistance, rebellious troops that will not give up until forced to do so. Although Jesus defeated Satan, we are living in territory which is still occupied by enemy resistance forces. The war was won at Calvary, but the terms are enforced right now through spiritual warfare (2 Corinthians 10:4-5).

WARRING ANGELS

The Messenger angels are the group that minister to and through Believers in spiritual warfare. They interpret God's will, protect, provide guidance, bring answers to prayer, announce, warn, instruct, bring judgment, encourage, sustain, deliver, and intercede on behalf of Believers in spiritual battle.

-God's warring angels bring judgment.

Let them be as chaff before the wind: and let the angel of the Lord chase them. Let their way be dark and slippery: and let the angel of the Lord persecute them. (Psalm 35:5-6).

And upon a set day Herod, arrayed in royal apparel, sat upon his throne, and made an oration unto them. And the people gave a shout, saying, It is the voice of a god, and not of a man. And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not God the glory: and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost. (Acts 12:21-23)

Curse ye Meroz, said the angel of the Lord, curse ye bitterly the inhabitants thereof; because they came not to the help of the Lord, to the help of the Lord against the mighty. (Judges 5:23)

-Gods warring angels protect God's people from the enemy.

And the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them: And it came between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel; and it was a cloud and darkness to them, but it gave light by night to these: so that the one came not near the other all the night. (Exodus 14:19-20)

-God's warring angels drive out the enemy.

God promised Israel:

And I will send an angel before thee; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite. (Exodus 23:2)

-God's warring angels bring chastisement.

When David sinned by numbering the people of Israel...

...the Lord sent a pestilence upon Israel from the morning even to the time appointed: and there died of the people from Dan even to Beer-sheba seventy thousand men. And when the angel stretched out his hand upon Jerusalem to destroy it, the Lord repented

him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed the people, It is enough: stay now thine hand. And the angel of the Lord was by the threshing place of Araunah the Jebusite. (2 Samuel 24:15-26)

The purpose in chastisement is always restoration to the Lord. David built an altar and received forgiveness of sins.

-God's warring angels fight for God's people.

There came a day when, surrounded by the enemy, God's people were outnumbered. In the midst of this impending devastation, King Hezekiah declared:

Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him: for there be more with us than with him: With him is an arm of flesh; but with us is the Lord our God to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. (2 Chronicles 32:7-8)

Through the prayers of Hezekiah, Isaiah, and God's people, the enemy was destroyed by an angel:

And the Lord sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. Thus the Lord saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all other, and guided them on every side. (2 Chronicles 32:21-22)

Then the angel of the Lord went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. (Isaiah 37:36)

On another occasion (2 Chronicles 32:10-19), the evil Sennacherib, king of Assyria, threatened a siege that would plunge Jerusalem into famine...

And for this cause Hezekiah the king, and the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz, prayed and cried to heaven. And the Lord sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. Thus the Lord saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all other, and guided them on every side. (2 Chronicles 32:20-22)

Then there was the time when a coalition of enemy nations came against God's people and Israel responded with praise and worship:

...when they began to sing and to praise, the Lord set ambushments against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten. For the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of mount Seir, utterly to slay and destroy them: and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, every one helped to destroy another. And when Judah came toward the watch tower in the wilderness, they looked unto the multitude, and, behold, they were dead bodies fallen to the earth, and none escaped. (2 Chronicles 20:22-24)

It is very possible that this ambush was staged by angels.

In an impending battle recorded in 2 Samuel 5, David's army was told to wait until they heard a special sound before advancing to conquer the enemy:

And when David inquired of the Lord, he said, Thou shalt not go up; but fetch a compass behind them, and come upon them over against the mulberry trees. And let it be, when thou hearest the sound of a going in the tops of the mulberry trees, that then thou shalt bestir thyself: for then shall the Lord go out before thee, to smite the host of the Philistines.⁵ And David did so, as the Lord had commanded him; and smote the Philistines from Geba until thou come to Gazer. (2 Samuel 5:23-25)

Most likely, this was the sound of God's angels coming to their aid, because armies in the natural world don't march on the tree tops.

-God's warring angels bring revelation to God's people.

In one vision that the Prophet Daniel had, a very real spiritual battle took place, hindering a messenger sent to Daniel. This heavenly messenger said, *"But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia"* (Daniel 10:13). What was Daniel doing while the principality of wickedness ("Prince of Persia") withstood the messenger from heaven? Daniel was fasting and praying and warring angels were dispatched in response (Daniel 10:3).

-God's warring angels will overcome all enemies in the end-times.

John said:

And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God. And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. (Revelation 19:11-14)

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. (Revelation 12:7-9)

-God's warring angels are innumerable.

Twelve legions of angels were available to Jesus:

Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels? (Matthew 26:53)

One legion in the Roman army was 6,000 soldiers, so 12 legions would be a minimum of 72,000 angels!

The Psalmist confirmed that...

The chariots of God are twenty thousand, even thousands of angels: the Lord is among them, as in Sinai, in the holy place. (Psalm 68:17)

God's warring angels are usually invisible, but Elisha and his servant were permitted to see them. The King of Syria was at war with Israel and came against Israel with..

...horses, and chariots, and a great host: and they came by night, and compassed the city about. And when the servant of the man of God was risen early, and gone forth, behold, an host compassed the city both with horses and chariots. (2 Kings 6:14-15)

Elisha's servant panicked, and asked what they should do. Elisha answered:

Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. And Elisha prayed, and said, Lord, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And the Lord opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha. (2 Kings 6:14-17).

Whether you are permitted to see the warring angels or not, know that they are always there in the spirit world ready to do battle in your behalf.

SURROUNDED BY EVIL

In this world, we are surrounded by evil spiritual forces. There is no need to fear, however, as Jesus has overcome all of the power of the enemy.

Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world. (1 John 4:4)

As Believers, we can be alert for Satan's attacks:

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world. (1 Peter 5:8-9)

We can resist Satan and his evil forces and not give place to them:

Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. (James 4:7)

Neither give place to the devil. (Ephesians 4:27)

We can arm ourselves for spiritual battle:

Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints. (Ephesians 6:10-18)

...And we should pray to God and thank Him for sending His warring angels to our aid.

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verse.

2. Discuss the natural and spiritual kingdoms.

3. According to 2 Corinthians 2:14, why must spiritual warfare be understood with a spiritual mind?

4. Define spiritual warfare.

5. Explain the multidimensional aspects of spiritual warfare.

6. Explain reasons for the spiritual conflict.

7. Using the Scriptures provided in this chapter, summarize the activities of God's warring angels.

-God's warring angels bring judgment.

-Gods warring angels protect God's people from the enemy.

-God's warring angels drive out the enemy.

-God's warring angels bring chastisement.

-God's warring angels fight for God's people.

-God's warring angels bring revelation to God's people.

-God's warring angels will overcome all enemies in the end-times.

-God's warring angels are innumerable.

8. Using the following Scriptures, explain why you need not fear spiritual battle.

-1 John 4:4

-1 Peter 5:8-9

-James 4:7

-Ephesians 6:10-18

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

ACTIVATING THE ANGELS

OBJECTIVES:

Upon completion of this chapter you will be able to:

- Summarize how the angels of God are activated.
- List hindrances to the ministry of angels in your life.

KEY VERSES:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them. (Isaiah 63:9-10)

INTRODUCTION

Angels do not report to you or take orders from you. They are servants of God, they follow His instructions, and they do His will at His bidding. There are, however, Scriptural keys that can activate or hinder their ministries in your behalf. That is the subject of this chapter.

ACTIVATING THE ANGELS

The Bible reveals several ways to activate the angels. You can...

-Activate the angels by operating under authority.

Mankind has dominion over the animals and the earth (Genesis 1:26). As Believers, we have authority over Satan and his evil foes (Luke 10:19). But we do not control the good angels of God. Angels operate under the authority of God. They serve you, but they are not your servants to perform as dictated by your whims and desires. They are God's servants. If you try to activate them by your own authority, it will not work.

In order to understand authority, you must understand submission:

*Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.
(James 4:7)*

Someone who is submissive to God and resists the enemy has authority over the enemy. He is submissive to God, honors His authority, obeys His Word, and obeys the laws of the land that do not conflict with that Word:

Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. (Romans 13:1-2)

You do not want the angels opposing you, which is what happened to the nation of Israel:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them. (Isaiah 63:9-10)

When Israel rebelled, their angel was no longer activated in their behalf:

And an angel of the Lord came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars: but ye have not obeyed my voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. And it came to pass, when the angel of the Lord spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept. And they called the name of that place Bochim: and they sacrificed there unto the Lord. (Judges 2:1-5)

Rebellion is the same as witchcraft (1 Samuel 15:23). Ask God to remove rebellion from your heart and mind and to bring your will into submission to Him.

-Activate the angels by speaking the Word.

Angels respond to the Word of God. The Psalmist declared:

Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word. (Psalm 103:20)

Angels heed the voice of God's Word. This means that by speaking God's Word into your circumstances, angels are dispatched to minister in your behalf. Negative words of fear, complaint, and unbelief do nothing to improve your situation.

In order to speak the Word you must know it, and that only comes by applying yourself diligently to study it:

Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth. (2 Timothy 2:15)

God watches over His Word to perform it:

Then said the Lord unto me, Thou hast well seen: for I will hasten my word to perform it. (Jeremiah 1:12)

God's promises that His Word will not return void:

So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it. (Isaiah 55:11)

-Activate the angels by prayer, praise, and worship.

King Hezekiah was facing an immense enemy army...

...And Hezekiah prayed before the Lord, and said, O Lord God of Israel, which dwellest between the cherubims, thou art the God, even thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: thou hast made heaven and earth. Lord, bow down thine ear, and hear: open, Lord, thine eyes, and see: and hear the words of Sennacherib, which hath sent him to reproach the living God. Of a truth, Lord, the kings of Assyria have destroyed the nations and their lands, And have cast their gods into the fire: for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them. Now therefore, O Lord our God, I beseech thee, save thou us out of his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that thou art the Lord God, even thou only. (2 Kings 15:15-34)

Hezekiah didn't whine and complain. He stated the facts as they were and then called on God for help. The Lord heard Hezekiah's prayer and dispatched an angel to come to his aid:

And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the Lord went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. (2 Kings 19:35)

One angel killed 185,000 of the enemy!

Abraham prayed for Lot, and the angels rescued him (Genesis 18:17-33). Daniel prayed for revelation, and an angel was sent to bring him understanding (Daniel 9:23). The prayers of the church resulted in an angel being dispatched to release Peter from jail (Acts 12). Jesus said that He could pray to the Father and request a legion of angels:

Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels? (Matthew 26:53)

Note that Jesus prayed to the Father, not to the angels.

Praise and worship, which are part of prayer, also activates the angels. In Old Testament times a mighty army had surrounded God's people. Jehoshaphat and the people of Israel came before the Lord...

And the Levites, of the children of the Kohathites, and of the children of the Korhites, stood up to praise the Lord God of Israel with a loud voice on high. (2 Chronicles 20:19)

A prophet of the Lord told the people:

Ye shall not need to fight in this battle: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of the Lord with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; tomorrow go out against them: for the Lord will be with you. (2 Chronicles 20:17)

The next day, the Lord set ambushes against the enemy, most likely angelic hosts.

-Activate the angels by requesting their assistance.

We do not pray to angels, we pray to God through Christ Jesus. We can, however, ask God for their assistance. For example, in Old Testament times an angel announced to Manoah's barren wife that she would have a son (Judges 13:2-5). The woman told her husband what had occurred, and he prayed and asked God to allow the angel to return to teach them how to raise the son that was to be born. God granted his request and the angel returned to give further instructions (Judges 13:7-15).

-Activate the angels by abiding in the secret place.

Psalm 91 teaches that as a Believer, you are surrounded by an angelic heavenly host. To those who abide in the secret place and live under the shadow of God it is promised, *"He shall give His angels charge over you, to keep you in all your ways. They shall bear you up in their hands, lest you dash your foot against a stone"* (Psalm 91:11).

The beginning of this Psalm in verses 1-2 reveals that the promises contained in this chapter are made to those who abide in the shadow of the Almighty. If you are in someone's shadow, it means you are walking the same way they are going. The protection promised in Psalm 91 is for when you are walking in all "your ways" --meaning the way you are traveling as you follow in the shadow of the Almighty. God may graciously protect you when you are walking contrary to His way, but the promise here is guaranteed to those walking in God's shadow.

If you say that you are abiding in the secret place, you should walk as Jesus walked because *"He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked"* (1 John 2:6). You should walk in newness of life (Romans 6:4) and in the Spirit, rather than in the flesh. Galatians 5 explains what this means and how to do it:

This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one

to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would. But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law. Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.
(Galatians 5:16-25)

Angels will be activated in your behalf as you walk God's way, remain in His shadow, and live your life in the Spirit rather than doing the works of the flesh.

-Activate the angels by fearing God.

As a Believer, the angels of God encamp around you. The Bible says, "*The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them*" (Psalm 34:7). The fear of the Lord is loving reverence for God, His person, His Word, and His actions (Malachi 1:5-6). When you fear God, you obey His Word (Ecclesiastes 12:13); you walk in His ways (Deuteronomy 8:6); you serve Him (Joshua 24:14; 2 Chronicles 19:9); and you depart from evil (Proverbs 3:7-8).

HINDERING THE ANGELS

Can you hinder the ministry of these supernatural agents of God in your behalf? To answer this question, let's examine the scriptures.

-Angels are hindered by negative words.

Angels are activated by God's Word. Your negative words and comments contrary to the Word of God prevent them from functioning. God dispatched an angel to go before Israel as they traveled through the wilderness:

Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared. Beware of him, and obey his voice, provoke him not; for he will not pardon your transgressions: for my name is in him. But if thou shalt indeed obey his voice, and do all that I speak; then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies, and an adversary unto thine adversaries. (Exodus 23:20-21)

God appointed the angel to keep Israel during their travels so they could safely arrive at their destination, but Israel's constant complaining resulted in several judgments from God (Numbers 11-12, 14, and 24). Believing and confessing the negative reports of giants in the Promised Land and refusing to enter in resulted in the death of an entire generation (Numbers 13-14).

Rebellious words resulted in the death of Korah and his followers (Numbers 16) and a plague followed the false accusations recorded in Numbers 16:41-50.

So what happened to the angel who was dispatched to keep them in the way and bring them safely to the promised land? The ministry of their angel was hindered because the people were no longer walking God's way and confessing His Word. They provoked and offended the angel:

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them. (Isaiah 63:9-10)

The Word declares that *"Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof"* (Proverbs 18:21). Each day you will either speak words of death or life into your circumstances. Do not allow your negative words to hinder the ministry of angels in your behalf.

-Angels are hindered by unbelief.

In Luke 1:8-20, an angel appeared to Zacharias and announced the he would have a son. Because of his advanced age and the barrenness of his wife, Zacharias did not believe the angel and he demanded a sign.

He got a sign all right! He became mute until his son, John, was born (verse 20). Only when he began to speak in faith and confirm the name given by the angel for the baby was his tongue once again loosed.

Unbelief affects your testimony, just as Zacharias' speech was affected. If Zacharias had believed the angel as Mary did when the angel gave her news of Christ's birth, then he could have joyously proclaimed the message to his wife, family, and friends throughout Elizabeth's pregnancy. Don't let unbelief hinder the ministry of angels in your life and render you mute spiritually.

-Angels are hindered by pride.

In Acts 12:21-25, King Herod appeared before the people dressed in his regal garments and sitting on his beautiful and expensive throne. Awed by this display of power and wealth, the people began to call him god and he did nothing to stop it. Immediately, an angel of the Lord struck him because he did not give glory to God. He was eaten by worms and died (verse 23). Angels can't tolerate pride because pride is one of the things God hates--most likely because it was the first sin and is the root of all sin (Proverbs 6:17). God resists the proud (James 4:6), so it is obvious that proud people will not be assisted by angels if God is resisting them.

-Angels are hindered by disregarding God's will.

Read the story of Balaam in Numbers 22. He was a prophet who, in disobedience to God's command, went with messengers from Moab at the request of evil Balak. On the way, an angel appeared in the way to stop him. The donkey Balaam was riding could see the angel, and stepped aside in fear. In so doing, the donkey crushed Balaam's foot against the wall and Balaam began beating the donkey. The donkey actually spoke, rebuking Balaam for his disobedience and his failure to recognize the ministry of the angel in his behalf. When you know God's will and deliberately violate it, instead of ministering to you the angels will stand in the way to oppose you.

-Angels are hindered by our sin.

Read the story of the lame man at the pool of Bethesda in John 5:1-15. Although an angel frequently appeared and stirred the waters for healing, this man had lain there for 38 years and never made it into the pool. When Jesus asked him if he wanted to be healed, his answer was not a resounding "Yes!" Instead he said, *"Sir, I have no man, when the water is troubled, to put me into the pool: but while I am coming, another steppeth down before me"* (John 5:7).

This man was so busy complaining and feeling sorry for himself that he didn't realize who was standing before him. After Jesus healed the man, He told him, *"... Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee"* (John 5:14). Not all infirmity is caused by personal sin (John 9:3), but apparently this man's disability was related to his sin. The angels had come many times to minister over the years, but this man needed more than an angel could give. He needed forgiveness for sin. Get rid of your sinful complaining spirit and watch the angels begin to work in your behalf!

SELF-TEST

1. Write the key verses.

2. Summarize how the angels of God are activated by the following:

-Operating under authority. _____

-Speaking the Word. _____

-Prayer, praise, and worship. _____

-Requesting their assistance. _____

-Abiding in the secret place. _____

-Fearing the Lord: _____

3. List five things that hinder the ministry of angels in your behalf.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of this manual.)

EPILOGUE

A GREAT CROWD OF WITNESSES

Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God. (Hebrews 12:1-2)

There is a great crowd of witnesses observing Believers—including the angels of God. Because of this, we are challenged to lay aside every weight and sin of this world and run our spiritual race with patience. Like Jesus, we are to look forward to the joy set before us. That unspeakable joy will be when we join the angels in the presence of God.

The Apostle Paul told Timothy...

...the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others. (2 Timothy 2:2)

Through this study you have received a revelation regarding the angels of God. Be sure to pass this important teaching on to faithful men and women so they will understand the purposes of angels, their ministries, and how to activate them in their own lives. Through this teaching they will also be warned regarding misconceptions about angels so that they will not fall prey to doctrinal error.

As you learned, an angel is a messenger. Although you aren't an angel, you have a similar mission to be a messenger, an ambassador of God to a lost and dying world (1 Corinthians 5:20). Like angels, we are charged with the faithful communication of God's Word so *"That the communication of thy faith may become effectual by the acknowledging of every good thing which is in you in Christ Jesus"* (Philemon 6).

The next time you look at the stars, remember that they are representative of the myriads of angels that surround you. Like the stars, angels are named by God. The stars and the angels are all known by Him. And so are you.

...And if you are blessed to have an angel appear to you, remember that it is for purpose not privilege. Focus on the message, not the messenger.

APPENDIX ONE

DIFFICULT PASSAGES REGARDING ANGELS

GENESIS 6:1-4:

And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. And the Lord said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also is flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years. There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown. (Genesis 6:1-4)

Who were these sons of God? There is no consensus among theologians as to what is meant by the sons of God marrying the daughters of men. There are two different views:

One: Some believe this passage refers to intercourse between fallen angels and human women who produced a race of giants. These sons of God transgressed their created purpose by lusting after the daughters of men and marrying wives who bore them children. This evil brought mankind to a new realm of wickedness so frightening and terrible that God saw it necessary to destroy the earth with a flood, saving only Noah and his family.

This view is supported by:

-Job 1:6; 2:1; and 38:7 which refer to angels as "sons of God".

-Jude 6-7 which seems to indicate sinful angels going after strange flesh and engaging in fornication. This belief could account for the reason why some angels are bound in prison and others are not (1 Peter 3:18-20; 2 Peter 2:4).

-Jesus said that men and women would not marry in Heaven, but would be like the angels. Men and women married on earth, so perhaps angels on earth did so also.

-The fall of these angels is recounted by Enoch, great-grandfather of Noah, who walked with God (Genesis 5:22). Copies of the Book of Enoch were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. Although this book is not a part of canonized Scripture, it does agree with the Genesis account and is, in fact, quoted in Scripture in Jude 1:14.

Two: Others believe that the sons who descended from the Godly line of Seth intermarried with daughters from the evil line of Cain. This view is supported by:

-The context of this passage which says that when the "sons of God" committed this sin, God saw that the wickedness of man was great; repented that He had made man; said He would not always strive with man; and said He would destroy man. Why would the angels not be mentioned? God refers only to man (Matthew 6:3-7).

-Jesus said that angels do not marry: There is no scripture that indicates angels are sexual beings either in Heaven or on earth (Matthew 22:30).

-The term "sons of God" is used for Believers in Scripture in Deuteronomy 32:5; Psalm 73:15; 80:17; and Hosea 1:10.

Regardless of the meaning of this passage, this issue should not become a point of contention, as it is not foundational to our faith. These unions--whoever they were between--were sinful. Allowed to go unpunished, eventually the Messianic line would have become polluted.

The important truth here is that as children of God--Believers--we are to be separate from the children of this world:

Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel? And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people. Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty. (2 Corinthians 6:14-18)

1 KINGS 22:20-22 AND 2 CHRONICLES 18:19-21:

And the Lord said, Who shall persuade Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead? And one said on this manner, and another said on that manner. And there came forth a spirit, and stood before the Lord, and said, I will persuade him. And the Lord said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt persuade him, and prevail also: go forth, and do so. (1 Kings 22:20-22)

And the Lord said, Who shall entice Ahab king of Israel, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead? And one spake saying after this manner, and another saying after that manner. Then there came out a spirit, and stood before the Lord, and said, I will entice him. And the Lord said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go out, and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And the Lord said, Thou shalt entice him, and thou

shalt also prevail: go out, and do even so. Now therefore, behold, the Lord hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of these thy prophets, and the Lord hath spoken evil against thee. (2 Chronicles 18:19-21)

Why would God do this? To answer this, consider the context. God's prophet, Michaiah, had already told King Ahab what would happen if he proceeded to battle. He is warned that whatever his prophets declare regarding the fight to come, it is a lie. Ahab disregarded the warning. When he died that day at sunset, it was because of his own stubborn refusal to listen to God, not due to angelic deception. He was a victim of his own decisions.

Would an angel of God be used for this purpose? We know that the "sons of God" who presented themselves before the throne in the book of Job included Satan (Job 1:6; 2:1). This means that, most likely, the lying spirit sent to the four hundred prophets of Ahab was an evil angel. God cannot do evil, so it stands to reason that the righteous angels who did not participate in Satan's rebellion cannot do evil.

1 CORINTHIANS 11:10:

For the man is not of the woman; but the woman of the man. Neither was the man created for the woman; but the woman for the man. For this cause ought the woman to have power on her head because of the angels. Nevertheless neither is the man without the woman, neither the woman without the man, in the Lord. (1 Corinthians 11:8-11)

There are various interpretations of this Scripture. Some believe this refers to head coverings that should be worn by women when they worship. Others believe it refers to long hair which glorifies God. The most likely interpretation is this: In Paul's day married women were required to wear a veil on their heads as a sign they were married—just as the modern day wedding ring is worn in many cultures. The head covering indicated that a woman was subject to her husband in a manner similar to how the angels are subject to God.

APPENDIX TWO

A COMPARISON OF ANGELS AND BELIEVERS

- Angels are spirits (Hebrews 1:4). A Believer is spirit and body (James 2:26).
- Angels do not marry, have sex, or procreate. Men and women do (Matthew 22:30).
- Angels are stronger than men, but not omnipotent--all powerful (Psalm 103:29; 2 Peter 2:11).
- Angels have greater spiritual knowledge than Believers, but they are not omniscient--all knowing (2 Samuel 14:20; Matthew 24:36).
- Angels have presence, as do Believers, but angels and men cannot be present everywhere as God can (Daniel 9:21-23; 10:10-14).
- Angels desire to look into matters pertaining to the Gospel, but cannot. Believers understand these things because they have experienced them (1 Peter 1:12).
- Angels cannot be redeemed if they sin—case in point, Satan’s angels. Man understands the Gospel and can be redeemed from sin.
- The good angels remained sinless as they were created. Mankind did not.
- Angels do not know what it means to be lost in sin and found by a Savior. Believers do.
- Believers are a little lower than angels, but in Christ they are positionally above angels spiritually (Hebrews 2:7).
- Both angels and Believers are to worship God.
- Both angels and Believers are servants and messengers of God.
- Angels do not go through trials and suffering. Believers do.
- Angels behold God’s face (Matthew 18:10). Believers do not. (Someday we will!)
- Believers have faith and hope in what we do not see. For angels, it is already a reality.
- Angels do not die. Men are subject to death but true Believers will be resurrected. Both are immortal. Men are subject to the fear of death, while angels are not.

-Angels have no promise of a spiritual inheritance. Believers have the promise of an inheritance reserved for them in Heaven (Ephesians 1:11-18).

-Angels will never know what it is like to have their tears wiped away by God. Believers will (Revelation 21:4).

-Angels and Believers are both elect, meaning that they were chosen for eternal life with God.

-Glorified man will judge angels. Man will be judged by God (1 Corinthians 20:36).

APPENDIX THREE

SATAN AND THE EVIL ANGELS

This appendix summarizes what the Bible teaches regarding Satan and the evil angels. It provides a concise overview of this subject. For an in-depth study, obtain the Harvestime International Network course entitled: “*Spiritual Strategies: A Manual For Spiritual Warfare*” . It is available free at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

THE ORIGIN OF SATAN

Satan was originally a good angel named Lucifer who was created by God:

All things were made by Him; and without Him was not any thing made that was made. (John 1:3)

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

God does not create evil. Satan was perfect when he was originally created, but he was given a free will to choose good or evil:

Thou was perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created till iniquity was found in thee. (Ezekiel 28:15)

THE FORMER POSITION OF SATAN

The Bible describes the original position and the fall of Satan:

...Thus saith the Lord God; Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created. Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee. (Ezekiel 28:12-15)

When Satan was created, he was an angel of God. He was one of the Cherubim class of angels and was holy, wise, beautiful, and perfect. He was the leader among the cherubs and is called a “guardian” or “covering”. His name was originally Lucifer which means “light bearer” (Isaiah

14:12). Satan was given a position on God's holy mountain and apparently led in worship. He originally dwelt in Eden and in the sanctuary (Exodus 28:14,16,18; 38:13; Revelation 21:10-21).

Lucifer was decked with precious stones set in gold (Ezekiel 28:13; Exodus 28:15-21). He is described as a gem of precious stones, but a gem has no light of its own. Its beauty is in its ability to reflect light from without. When God created Lucifer, He made him with a capacity to reflect the glory of God to a greater degree than any other created being. God was the light that made Lucifer radiate beauty. Unfortunately, after his fall, he became the prince of darkness.

THE FALL OF SATAN

Satan did not retain this glorious position. The Bible describes his rebellion and fall:

How art thou fallen from Heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning. How art thou cut down to the ground which didst waken the nations. For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into Heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to Hell, to the sides of the pit. (Isaiah 14:12-15)

Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee. Thou hast defiled thy sanctuaries by the multitude of thine iniquities, by the iniquity of thy traffick; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of thee, it shall devour thee, and I will bring thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee. All they that know thee among the people shall be astonished at thee: thou shalt be a terror, and never shalt thou be any more. (Ezekiel 28:17-19)

Satan's fall from his angelic position occurred because of pride and rebellion demonstrated in five wrong attitudes. Satan said:

-I WILL ascend unto Heaven: He wanted to occupy the abode of God, desiring equal recognition.

-I WILL exalt my throne above the angels of God: He not only desired to occupy God's abode, but he also coveted His rule over the angelic hosts.

-I WILL sit also upon the mountain of the congregation: According to Isaiah 2:2 and Psalms 48:2, this is the center of God's earthly rule. Satan desired to rule the earth as well as the heavens and the angels.

-I WILL ascend above the heights of the clouds: Clouds in Scripture are symbolic of the glory of God. Satan wanted God's glory for himself.

-I WILL be like the Most High: God has many names by which He is known. Why did Satan choose the name Most High God? He selected this title because it reflects God as “possessor of Heaven and earth” and Satan coveted that position.

A key lesson from the fall of Satan is to recognize the danger of the first sin, the root of all sins, which is the sin of pride.

RESULTS OF SATAN'S SIN

Here are the terrible results of Satan's sin:

-Banishment from Heaven. Because of his sin, Satan was banished:

*...I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God...I will cast thee to the ground...
(Ezekiel 28:16-17)*

-Corruption of character. Lucifer, created for God's glory, became Satan with a character that opposed all God is and does.

-Perversion of power. Satan's power was once used for God's glory, but it became disruptive and destructive. According to Isaiah 14 he weakens the nations (verse 12), causes the earth and governments to tremble (verse 16), and torments those taken as his prisoner from finding any relief (verse 17).

-Destined to the Lake of Fire. Satan is destined for the lake of fire (Isaiah 14:15).

-Entrance of sin in the universe. When Satan rebelled, sin entered the universe. As a result, there were two actions God could have taken:

-He could have struck down Satan and killed him, but if God had brought down the first enemy in this way, there would always have been the possibility of another rebellion. The history of Heaven would have been marked with similar disasters.

-The other action was the one which the Bible indicates that God took. The claims of Satan to superior power should have their complete trial on earth in the span of eternity we call time.

When God created the first man and woman, the trial on earth began. The story of the temptation of Adam and Eve by Satan and their fall into sin is recorded in Genesis chapter three. The battle is still underway on earth. That is what spiritual warfare is all about. Satan is still seeking power, position, and worship, but he is already a defeated foe. Jesus overcame the power of Satan through His death and resurrection, and Satan's final destiny is already confirmed in the Bible. He still tries to exert his power on earth, and that is why there is spiritual battle.

-Defection of other angels of God. When Satan fell from Heaven he did not fall alone. He took with him a portion of the angelic host of Heaven who participated in his rebellion against God. This group of angels are now part of an evil force of demons.

SATAN'S PRESENT LOCATION

Satan is present in the world in spirit form:

And the Lord said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. (Job 1:7)

Be sober, be vigilant, because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. (1 Peter 5:8)

Although Satan is present in the world, he is not omnipresent, which means he cannot be every place in the world at one time as God can. This is why he employs a host of demons to accomplish his plans.

Satan has access to the presence of God and operates on the earth, including the "air" or region above the earth:

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them. And the Lord said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. (Job 1:6-7)

Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience. (Ephesians 2:2)

SATAN'S ACTIVITIES

Satan is a murderer (John 8:44); an adversary (1 Peter 5:8); a liar (John 8:44); and accuser of Believers (Revelation 12:10). He tempts Believers (Acts 5:3); plants counterfeits among Believers (Matthew 13:38-39); tries to defeat Believers through demonic activity (Ephesians 6:12); and incites persecution against Believers (Revelation 2:10). We may summarize the activities of Satan by noting that they are always directed against God, His plan, and His people. He will attack you in the areas of your worship of God, the Word of God, your Christian walk, and your work for God.

Satan works in the lives of unbelievers by blinding their minds to the truth of God's Word (1 Corinthians 4:4); snatching the Word out of their hearts (Luke 8:12); using them to oppose the work of God (Revelation 2:13); and deceiving them (Revelation 20:3).

THE ATTRIBUTES OF SATAN

Unlike God, Satan is not omniscient (knowing all things). If Satan could foresee the future he never would have allowed Jesus to die on the cross. He would have known that the death of Jesus would overthrow his power and provide a way of escape from the bondage of sin for all mankind.

Satan is not omnipotent (all powerful). Jesus said the power of God within you is greater than the power of Satan. For those who believe in Jesus, Satan is already a defeated foe (John 12:31). He is strong only to those who yield to him. His power is limited by the power of God (Job 1:10-12) and he is only able to overcome a Believer as they yield control to him.

Satan is a spirit, but he also has attributes of a real personality. The Bible teaches that he is:

-Intelligent and subtle.

But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtility, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ. (2 Corinthians 11:3)

-Emotional.

And the dragon was wroth with the woman... (Revelation 12:17)

-Self-willed.

And that they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will. (2 Timothy 2:26)

-Powerful.

...Prince of the power of the air... (Ephesians 2:2)

-Deceitful.

Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. (Ephesians 6:11)

-Fierce and cruel.

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. (1 Peter 5:8)

-Deceptive.

*And no marvel: For Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.
(2 Corinthians 11:14)*

THE NAMES OF SATAN

The Bible provides many names for Satan which reveal more about his nature and activities. As you previously learned, Satan was originally called the "anointed cherub" and "Lucifer" before his rebellion. Other names for Satan are:

Abaddon (Hebrew word for a destroying angel):	Revelation 9:11
Accuser of the Brethren:	Revelation 12:10
Adversary:	1 Peter 5:8
Angel of bottomless pit:	Revelation 9:11
Angel of light:	2 Corinthians 11:4
Apollyon (Greek word for destroyer):	Revelation 9:11
Beelzebub:	Matthew 12:24; Luke 11:15; Mark 3:22
Belial:	2 Corinthians 6:15
Deceiver:	Revelation 12:9; 20:3
Destroyer:	Revelation 9:11; 1 Corinthians 10:10
Devil (means slanderer):	1 Peter 5:8; Matthew 4:1
Dragon:	Revelation 12:3
Enemy:	Matthew 13:39
Evil One:	1 John 5:19
God of this world:	2 Corinthians 4:4
King of Tyrus:	Ezekiel 28:12-15
Liar, father of lies:	John 8:44
Murderer:	John 8:44
Prince of the devils:	Matthew 12:24
Prince of this world:	John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11
Prince of the power of the air:	Ephesians 2:2
Satan (means adversary):	John 13:27
Serpent:	Revelation 12:9; 2 Corinthians 1:3
Tempter:	Matthew 4:3; 1 Thessalonians 3:5
Roaring Lion:	1 Peter 5:8
Ruler of darkness:	Ephesians 6:12
Spirit that works in the children of disobedience:	Ephesians 2:2

You can recognize the power of Satan from his attributes and names. Because he is a deceptive, powerful enemy the Bible warns:

Be sober, be vigilant, because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. (1 Peter 5:8)

Neither give place to the devil. (Ephesians 4:27)

This former “light bearer” also masquerades as an “angel of light” (1 Corinthians 11:14). This is one of the reasons it is so important for you to have a biblical understanding of the angels of God so you will not be deceived by evil spiritual beings.

THE EVIL ANGELS

God originally created all of the angels:

All things were made by Him; and without Him was not any thing made that was made. (John 1:3)

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

Demons were originally like the other angels of God with the same attributes, position, and purposes as the good angels. When Satan rebelled against God, a portion of the angels participated in his rebellion, so God cast them out of Heaven along with Satan. They were no longer good spiritual beings (angels), but became evil spiritual beings (demons):

And there was war in Heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon (Satan); and the dragon fought and his angels. And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in Heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. (Revelation 12:7-9)

If demons are not "fallen" angels, then we have no other Biblical explanation for their existence. Satan cannot create his own forces, because all things were created by God and God cannot create evil. There are two groups of these fallen angels. One group is actively opposing God and His people on earth. Another is confined in chains:

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to Hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness to be reserved unto judgment...(2 Peter 2:4)

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. (Jude 6)

The Scriptures do not reveal why some of the evil angels are confined, but apparently it is because of some specific sin. The leader of both the confined demons and the active demons is Satan, who is called the "prince" of devils (Matthew 12:24).

THE ATTRIBUTES OF DEMONS

In their original sinless condition, demons had the same attributes as the good angels. In their present evil state these demons:

-Are spirits:	Matthew 8:16; Luke 10:17, 20
-Can appear visibly:	Genesis 3:1; Zechariah 3:1; Matthew 4:9-10
-Can speak:	Mark 5:9, 12; Luke 8:28; Matthew 8:31
-Believe:	James 2:19
-Exercise their wills:	Luke 11:24; 8:32
-Demonstrate intelligence:	Mark 1:24
-Have emotions:	Luke 8:28; James 2:19
-Have recognition:	Acts 19:15
-Have supernatural strength:	Acts 19:16; Mark 5:3
-Have supernatural presence:	Daniel 9:21-23
-Are eternal:	Matthew 25:41
-Have their own doctrine:	1 Timothy 4:1-3
-Are evil:	Matthew 10:1; Mark 1:27; 3:11; 1 Timothy 4:1-3
-Know their destiny:	Matthew 8:29
-Recognize Christ:	Mark 1:24

THE NAMES OF DEMONS

Demons are called evil spirits six times and unclean spirits 23 times in the New Testament. They are also called devils (Mark 1:32) and the devil's angels (Matthew 25:41).

THE ORGANIZATION OF DEMONIC FORCES

You recall from studying Chapter Four of this manual that God has established an organization for His angels:

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: All things were created by Him, and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

Satan is an imitator, not an originator. He has organized his demons in a structure similar to that of God's forces:

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. (Ephesians 6:12)

These organized forces of demons...

-Are united: In the case of the demonized man recorded in Luke 8:30 the demons were united in their purpose, which in this instance was possession of the man. The same is true in Matthew 12:45 where an excised demon returns with others and in the case of Mary Magdalene who had seven demons (Luke 16:9). Jesus spoke of the unity of demonic powers when He said:

And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand? (Matthew 12:26)

-Have different degrees of wickedness: This is illustrated by the demon who said he would return with other evil spirits:

When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he findeth it empty, swept, and garnished. Then goeth he and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself and they enter in and dwell there: And the last state of that man is worse than the first... (Matthew 12:43-45)

-Are of different kinds: The Bible teaches that man has a body, soul, and spirit. There are three major kinds of demons that attack the body, soul, and spirit of man:

-Evil or unclean spirits: They are responsible for immoral acts, unclean thoughts, oppression, possession, depression, and other strategies of Satan. They afflict the mind and the soulish nature of man (Matthew 10:1; 12:43; Mark 1:23-26).

-Spirits of infirmity: These spirits afflict the physical body (Luke 13:11).

-Seducing spirits: Seducing spirits afflict the mind, soul, and spirit of man, influencing him to believe false doctrines as indicated in 1 Timothy 4:1. These spirits seduce people to believe a lie and be damned to eternal punishment. They are spirits of false doctrines, cults, false Christs, and false teachers.

THE ACTIVITIES OF DEMONS

Since Satan is not omnipresent (present everywhere), he uses demons to do his will and accomplish his purposes throughout the world. Demons constitute the "powers of the air" (Ephesians 2:2) and the "powers of darkness" (Colossians 1:13) and are all under the control of Satan.

Demons follow orders given by their prince, Satan. We can summarize the activities of demons by noting that they are always directed against God, His plan, and His people. Demons extend Satan's power by promoting deception and wickedness. They affect individuals, governments, nations, and the world system. They promote rebellion and slander both God and men. They promote idolatry, false doctrines, and blind men and women to the truth of the Gospel.

These demons attack unbelievers and cause them to commit terrible evil acts, to murder, injure, commit suicide, etc. They affect the mind with emotional problems and the body with physical infirmities. They demonize people by residing within a person, exerting direct control of the person's mind and actions. Demon possession is characterized by unclean spirits (Mark 5:2); fits of rage (Mark 5:4); unusual physical strength (Mark 5:3); resistance to spiritual things (Mark 5:7); and alteration of voice and personality (Mark 5:9).

Demons attack Believers by temptation, deception, depression, and oppression. They try to keep you in bondage to habits and fear. They accuse and slander you, create division and confusion, and attack your physical body. Demons are used by Satan to attack the Word of God, your worship of God, your walk with God, and your work for God.

THE FINAL DESTINATION OF SATAN AND DEMONS

Satan will be bound in a pit for 1,000 years before he is committed to the lake of fire (Revelation 20:13) .

Hell is prepared for the Devil and his angels. It will be their final destiny:

Then shall He (Jesus) say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels. (Matthew 25:41)

And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. (Revelation 20:10)

When Jesus confronted two men possessed by demons, their response was:

...What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time? (Matthew 8:29)

The demons in the possessed men knew their final destiny was a place of eternal torment and that there was a set time for their banishment.

APPENDIX FOUR

BIBLICAL REFERENCES TO ANGELS

REFERENCE TO ANGELS (Plural)

OLD TESTAMENT

Genesis 19:1

And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing them rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground.

Genesis 19:15

And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city.

Genesis 28:12

And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it.

Genesis 32:1

And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him.

Job 4:18

Behold, he put no trust in his servants; and his angels he charged with folly.

Psalms 8:5

For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour.

Psalms 68:17

The chariots of God are twenty thousand, even thousands of angels: the Lord is among them, as in Sinai, in the holy place.

Psalms 78:25

Man did eat angels' food: he sent them meat to the full.

Psalms 78:49

He cast upon them the fierceness of his anger, wrath, and indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels among them.

Psalms 91:11

For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.

Psalms 103:20

Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.

Psalms 104:4

Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire.

Psalms 148:2

Praise ye him, all his angels: praise ye him, all his hosts.

NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew 4:6

And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in their hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone.

Matthew 4:11

Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

Matthew 13:39

The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels.

Matthew 13:41

The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity.

Matthew 13:49

So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just.

Matthew 16:27

For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.

Matthew 18:10

Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.

Matthew 22:30

For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.

Matthew 24:31

And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Matthew 24:36

But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Matthew 25:31

When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory.

Matthew 25:41

Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.

Matthew 26:53

Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels?

Mark 1:13

And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him.

Mark 8:38

Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.

Mark 12:25

For when they shall rise from the dead, they neither marry, nor are given in marriage; but are as the angels which are in heaven.

Mark 13:27

And then shall he send his angels, and shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven.

Mark 13:32

But of that day and that hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father.

Luke 2:15

And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another, Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing which is come to pass, which the Lord hath made known unto us.

Luke 4:10

For it is written, He shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee.

Luke 9:26

For whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come in his own glory, and in his Father's, and of the holy angels.

Luke 12:8

Also I say unto you, Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of man also confess before the angels of God.

Luke 12:9

But he that denieth me before men shall be denied before the angels of God.

Luke 15:10

Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth.

Luke 16:22

And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried.

Luke 20:36

Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection.

Luke 24:23

And when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which said that he was alive.

John 1:51

And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.

John 20:12

And seeth two angels in white sitting, the one at the head, and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain.

Acts 7:53

Who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept it.

Romans 8:38-39

For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1 Corinthians 4:9

For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men.

1 Corinthians 6:3

Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?

1 Corinthians 11:10

For this cause ought the woman to have power on her head because of the angels.

1 Corinthians 13:1

Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal.

Galatians 3:19

Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.

Colossians 2:18

Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind.

2 Thessalonians 1:7

And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels.

1 Timothy 3:16

And without controversy great is the mystery of Godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.

1 Timothy 5:21

I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality.

Hebrews 1:4

Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.

Hebrews 1:5

For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son?

Hebrews 1:6

And again, when he bringeth in the first begotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.

Hebrews 1:7

And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.

Hebrews 1:13

But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?

Hebrews 2:2-3

For if the word spoken by angels was stedfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward; How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him.

Hebrews 2:5

For unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak.

Hebrews 2:7

Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands.

Hebrews 2:9

But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

Hebrews 2:16

For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.

Hebrews 12:22

But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels.

Hebrews 13:2

Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares.

1 Peter 1:12

Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

1 Peter 3:22

Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

2 Peter 2:4

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment...

2 Peter 2:11

Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord.

Jude 6

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

Revelation 1:20

The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.

Revelation 3:5

He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.

Revelation 5:11

And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands.

Revelation 7:1

And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree.

Revelation 7:2

And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea.

Revelation 7:11

And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God,

Revelation 8:2

And I saw the seven angels which stood before God; and to them were given seven trumpets.

Revelation 8:6

And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound.

Revelation 8:13

And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound!

Revelation 9:14

Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates.

Revelation 9:15

And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men.

Revelation 12:7

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels.

Revelation 12:9

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 14:10

The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb.

Revelation 15:1

And I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvellous, seven angels having the seven last plagues; for in them is filled up the wrath of God.

Revelation 15:6

And the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and having their breasts girded with golden girdles.

Revelation 15:7

And one of the four beasts gave unto the seven angels seven golden vials full of the wrath of God, who liveth for ever and ever.

Revelation 15:8

And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God, and from his power; and no man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled.

Revelation 16:1

And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels, Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth.

Revelation 17:1

And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters.

Revelation 21:9

And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife.

Revelation 21:12

And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel.

REFERENCES TO ANGEL (Singular)

OLD TESTAMENT

Genesis 16:7

And the angel of the Lord found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur.

Genesis 16:9

And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands.

Genesis 16:10

And the angel of the Lord said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude.

Genesis 16:11

And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Behold, thou art with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the Lord hath heard thy affliction.

Genesis 21:17

And God heard the voice of the lad; and the angel of God called Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her, What aileth thee, Hagar? fear not; for God hath heard the voice of the lad where he is.

Genesis 22:11

And the angel of the Lord called unto him out of heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: and he said, Here am I.

Genesis 22:15

And the angel of the Lord called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time.

Genesis 24:7

The Lord God of heaven, which took me from my father's house, and from the land of my kindred, and which spake unto me, and that sware unto me, saying, Unto thy seed will I give this land; he shall send his angel before thee, and thou shalt take a wife unto my son from thence.

Genesis 24:40

And he said unto me, The Lord, before whom I walk, will send his angel with thee, and prosper thy way; and thou shalt take a wife for my son of my kindred, and of my father's house.

Genesis 31:11

And the angel of God spake unto me in a dream, saying, Jacob: And I said, Here am I.

Genesis 48:16

The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.

Exodus 3:2

And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed.

Exodus 14:19

And the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them.

Exodus 23:20

Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared.

Exodus 23:23

For mine Angel shall go before thee, and bring thee in unto the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites: and I will cut them off.

Exodus 32:34

Therefore now go, lead the people unto the place of which I have spoken unto thee: behold, mine Angel shall go before thee: nevertheless in the day when I visit I will visit their sin upon them.

Exodus 33:2

And I will send an angel before thee; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite.

Numbers 20:16

And when we cried unto the Lord, he heard our voice, and sent an angel, and hath brought us forth out of Egypt: and, behold, we are in Kadesh, a city in the uttermost of thy border.

Numbers 22:22

And God's anger was kindled because he went: and the angel of the Lord stood in the way for an adversary against him. Now he was riding upon his ass, and his two servants were with him.

Numbers 22:23

And the ass saw the angel of the Lord standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and the ass turned aside out of the way, and went into the field: and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way.

Numbers 22:24

But the angel of the Lord stood in a path of the vineyards, a wall being on this side, and a wall on that side.

Numbers 22:25

And when the ass saw the angel of the Lord, she thrust herself unto the wall, and crushed Balaam's foot against the wall: and he smote her again.

Numbers 22:26

And the angel of the Lord went further, and stood in a narrow place, where was no way to turn either to the right hand or to the left.

Numbers 22:27

And when the ass saw the angel of the Lord, she fell down under Balaam: and Balaam's anger was kindled, and he smote the ass with a staff.

Numbers 22:31

Then the Lord opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of the Lord standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and he bowed down his head, and fell flat on his face.

Numbers 22:32

And the angel of the Lord said unto him, Wherefore hast thou smitten thine ass these three times? behold, I went out to withstand thee, because thy way is perverse before me.

Numbers 22:34

And Balaam said unto the angel of the Lord, I have sinned; for I knew not that thou stoodest in the way against me: now therefore, if it displease thee, I will get me back again.

Numbers 22:35

And the angel of the Lord said unto Balaam, Go with the men: but only the word that I shall speak unto thee, that thou shalt speak. So Balaam went with the princes of Balak.

Judges 2:1

And an angel of the Lord came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you.

Judges 2:4

And it came to pass, when the angel of the Lord spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept.

Judges 5:23

Curse ye Meroz, said the angel of the Lord, curse ye bitterly the inhabitants thereof; because they came not to the help of the Lord, to the help of the Lord against the mighty.

Judges 6:11

And there came an angel of the Lord, and sat under an oak which was in Ophrah, that pertained unto Joash the Abi-ezrite: and his son Gideon threshed wheat by the winepress, to hide it from the Midianites.

Judges 6:12

And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him, and said unto him, The Lord is with thee, thou mighty man of valour.

Judges 6:20

And the angel of God said unto him, Take the flesh and the unleavened cakes, and lay them upon this rock, and pour out the broth. And he did so.

Judges 6:21

Then the angel of the Lord put forth the end of the staff that was in his hand, and touched the flesh and the unleavened cakes; and there rose up fire out of the rock, and consumed the flesh and the unleavened cakes. Then the angel of the Lord departed out of his sight.

Judges 6:22

And when Gideon perceived that he was an angel of the Lord, Gideon said, Alas, O Lord God! for because I have seen an angel of the Lord face to face.

Judges 13:3

And the angel of the Lord appeared unto the woman, and said unto her, Behold now, thou art barren, and bearest not: but thou shalt conceive, and bear a son.

Judges 13:6

Then the woman came and told her husband, saying, A man of God came unto me, and his countenance was like the countenance of an angel of God, very terrible: but I asked him not whence he was, neither told he me his name.

Judges 13:9

And God hearkened to the voice of Manoah; and the angel of God came again unto the woman as she sat in the field: but Manoah her husband was not with her.

Judges 13:13

And the angel of the Lord said unto Manoah, Of all that I said unto the woman let her beware.

Judges 13:15

And Manoah said unto the angel of the Lord, I pray thee, let us detain thee, until we shall have made ready a kid for thee.

Judges 13:16

And the angel of the Lord said unto Manoah, Though thou detain me, I will not eat of thy bread: and if thou wilt offer a burnt offering, thou must offer it unto the Lord. For Manoah knew not that he was an angel of the Lord.

Judges 13:17

And Manoah said unto the angel of the Lord, What is thy name, that when thy sayings come to pass we may do thee honour?

Judges 13:18

And the angel of the Lord said unto him, Why askest thou thus after my name, seeing it is secret?

Judges 13:19

So Manoah took a kid with a meat offering, and offered it upon a rock unto the Lord: and the angel did wondrously; and Manoah and his wife looked on.

Judges 13:20

For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of the Lord ascended in the flame of the altar. And Manoah and his wife looked on it, and fell on their faces to the ground.

Judges 13:21

But the angel of the Lord did no more appear to Manoah and to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was an angel of the Lord.

1 Samuel 29:9

And Achish answered and said to David, I know that thou art good in my sight, as an angel of God: notwithstanding the princes of the Philistines have said, He shall not go up with us to the battle.

2 Samuel 14:17

Then thine handmaid said, The word of my Lord the king shall now be comfortable: for as an angel of God, so is my Lord the king to discern good and bad: therefore the Lord thy God will be with thee.

2 Samuel 14:20

To fetch about this form of speech hath thy servant Joab done this thing: and my Lord is wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of God, to know all things that are in the earth.

2 Samuel 19:27

And he hath slandered thy servant unto my Lord the king; but my Lord the king is as an angel of God: do therefore what is good in thine eyes.

2 Samuel 24:16

And when the angel stretched out his hand upon Jerusalem to destroy it, the Lord repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed the people, It is enough: stay now thine hand. And the angel of the Lord was by the threshing place of Araunah the Jebusite.

2 Samuel 24:17

And David spake unto the Lord when he saw the angel that smote the people, and said, Lo, I have sinned, and I have done wickedly: but these sheep, what have they done? let thine hand, I pray thee, be against me, and against my father's house.

1 Kings 13:18

He said unto him, I am a prophet also as thou art; and an angel spake unto me by the word of the Lord, saying, Bring him back with thee into thine house, that he may eat bread and drink water. But he lied unto him.

1 Kings 19:5

And as he lay and slept under a juniper tree, behold, then an angel touched him, and said unto him, Arise and eat.

1 Kings 19:7

And the angel of the Lord came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise and eat; because the journey is too great for thee.

2 Kings 1:3

But the angel of the Lord said to Elijah the Tishbite, Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and say unto them, Is it not because there is not a God in Israel, that ye go to inquire of Baal-zebub the God of Ekron?

2 Kings 1:15

And the angel of the Lord said unto Elijah, Go down with him: be not afraid of him. And he arose, and went down with him unto the king.

2 Kings 19:35

And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the Lord went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

1 Chronicles 21:12

Either three years' famine; or three months to be destroyed before thy foes, while that the sword of thine enemies overtaketh thee; or else three days the sword of the Lord, even the pestilence, in the land, and the angel of the Lord destroying throughout all the coasts of Israel. Now therefore advise thyself what word I shall bring again to him that sent me.

1 Chronicles 21:15

And God sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it: and as he was destroying, the Lord beheld, and he repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed, It is enough, stay now thine hand. And the angel of the Lord stood by the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite.

1 Chronicles 21:16

And David lifted up his eyes, and saw the angel of the Lord stand between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders of Israel, who were clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces.

1 Chronicles 21:18

Then the angel of the Lord commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up, and set up an altar unto the Lord in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite.

1 Chronicles 21:20

And Ornan turned back, and saw the angel; and his four sons with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat.

1 Chronicles 21:27

And the Lord commanded the angel; and he put up his sword again into the sheath thereof.

1 Chronicles 21:30

But David could not go before it to inquire of God: for he was afraid because of the sword of the angel of the Lord.

2 Chronicles 32:21

And the Lord sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword.

Psalms 34:7

The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.

Psalms 35:5

Let them be as chaff before the wind: and let the angel of the Lord chase them.

Psalms 35:6

Let their way be dark and slippery: and let the angel of the Lord persecute them.

Ecclesiastes 5:6

Suffer not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin; neither say thou before the angel, that it was an error: wherefore should God be angry at thy voice, and destroy the work of thine hands?

Isaiah 37:36

Then the angel of the Lord went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

Isaiah 63:9

In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old.

Daniel 3:28

Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any God, except their own God.

Daniel 6:22

My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.

Hosea 12:4

Yea, he had power over the angel, and prevailed: he wept, and made supplication unto him: he found him in Bethel, and there he spake with us.

Zechariah 1:9

Then said I, O my Lord, what are these? And the angel that talked with me said unto me, I will shew thee what these be.

Zechariah 1:11

And they answered the angel of the Lord that stood among the myrtle trees, and said, We have walked to and fro through the earth, and, behold, all the earth sitteth still, and is at rest.

Zechariah 1:12

Then the angel of the Lord answered and said, O Lord of hosts, how long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem and on the cities of Judah, against which thou hast had indignation these threescore and ten years?

Zechariah 1:13

And the Lord answered the angel that talked with me with good words and comfortable words.

Zechariah 1:14

So the angel that communed with me said unto me, Cry thou, saying, Thus saith the Lord of hosts; I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a great jealousy.

Zechariah 1:19

And I said unto the angel that talked with me, What be these? And he answered me, These are the horns which have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem.

Zechariah 2:3

And, behold, the angel that talked with me went forth, and another angel went out to meet him.

Zechariah 3:1

And he shewed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him.

Zechariah 3:3

Now Joshua was clothed with filthy garments, and stood before the angel.

Zechariah 3:5

And I said, Let them set a fair mitre upon his head. So they set a fair mitre upon his head, and clothed him with garments. And the angel of the Lord stood by.

Zechariah 3:6

And the angel of the Lord protested unto Joshua...

Zechariah 4:1

And the angel that talked with me came again, and waked me, as a man that is wakened out of his sleep.

Zechariah 4:4

So I answered and spake to the angel that talked with me, saying, What are these, my Lord?

Zechariah 4:5

Then the angel that talked with me answered and said unto me, Knowest thou not what these be? And I said, No, my Lord.

Zechariah 5:5

Then the angel that talked with me went forth, and said unto me, Lift up now thine eyes, and see what is this that goeth forth.

Zechariah 5:10

Then said I to the angel that talked with me, Whither do these bear the ephah?

Zechariah 6:4

Then I answered and said unto the angel that talked with me, What are these, my Lord?

Zechariah 6:5

And the angel answered and said unto me, These are the four spirits of the heavens, which go forth from standing before the Lord of all the earth.

Zechariah 12:8

In that day shall the Lord defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and he that is feeble among them at that day shall be as David; and the house of David shall be as God, as the angel of the Lord before them.

NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew 1:20

But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost.

Matthew 1:24

Then Joseph being raised from sleep did as the angel of the Lord had bidden him, and took unto him his wife.

Matthew 2:13

And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him.

Matthew 2:19

But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appeareth in a dream to Joseph in Egypt.

Matthew 28:2

And, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it.

Matthew 28:5

And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not ye: for I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified.

Luke 1:11

And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense.

Luke 1:13

But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John.

Luke 1:18

And Zacharias said unto the angel, Whereby shall I know this? for I am an old man, and my wife well stricken in years.

Luke 1:19

And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent to speak unto thee, and to shew thee these glad tidings.

Luke 1:26

And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth.

Luke 1:28

And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women.

Luke 1:30

And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God.

Luke 1:34

Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?

Luke 1:35

And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

Luke 1:38

And Mary said, Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. And the angel departed from her.

Luke 2:9

And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid.

Luke 2:10

And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.

Luke 2:13

And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying...

Luke 2:21

And when eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child, his name was called Jesus, which was so named of the angel before he was conceived in the womb.

Luke 22:43

And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him.

John 5:4

For an angel went down at a certain season into the pool, and troubled the water: whosoever then first after the troubling of the water stepped in was made whole of whatsoever disease he had.

John 12:29

The people therefore, that stood by, and heard it, said that it thundered: others said, An angel spake to him.

Acts 5:19

But the angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors, and brought them forth, and said...

Acts 6:15

And all that sat in the council, looking stedfastly on him, saw his face as it had been the face of an angel.

Acts 7:30

And when forty years were expired, there appeared to him in the wilderness of mount Sina an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush.

Acts 7:35

This Moses whom they refused, saying, Who made thee a ruler and a judge? the same did God send to be a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush.

Acts 7:38

This is he, that was in the church in the wilderness with the angel which spake to him in the mount Sina, and with our fathers: who received the lively oracles to give unto us.

Acts 8:26

And the angel of the Lord spake unto Philip, saying, Arise, and go toward the south unto the way that goeth down from Jerusalem unto Gaza, which is desert.

Acts 10:3

He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius.

Acts 10:7

And when the angel which spake unto Cornelius was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a devout soldier of them that waited on him continually.

Acts 10:22

And they said, Cornelius the centurion, a just man, and one that feareth God, and of good report among all the nation of the Jews, was warned from God by an holy angel to send for thee into his house, and to hear words of thee.

Acts 11:13

And he shewed us how he had seen an angel in his house, which stood and said unto him, Send men to Joppa, and call for Simon, whose surname is Peter.

Acts 12:7

And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon him, and a light shined in the prison: and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from his hands.

Acts 12:8

And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals. And so he did. And he saith unto him, Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me.

Acts 12:9

And he went out, and followed him; and wist not that it was true which was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision.

Acts 12:10

When they were past the first and the second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth unto the city; which opened to them of his own accord: and they went out, and passed on through one street; and forthwith the angel departed from him.

Acts 12:11

And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from all the expectation of the people of the Jews.

Acts 12:15

And they said unto her, Thou art mad. But she constantly affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, It is his angel.

Acts 12:23

And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not God the glory: and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost.

Acts 23:8

For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit: but the Pharisees confess both.

Acts 23:9

And there arose a great cry: and the scribes that were of the Pharisees' part arose, and strove, saying, We find no evil in this man: but if a spirit or an angel hath spoken to him, let us not fight against God.

Acts 27:23

For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve.

2 Corinthians 11:14

And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.

Galatians 1:8

But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

Galatians 4:14

And my temptation which was in my flesh ye despised not, nor rejected; but received me as an angel of God, even as Christ Jesus.

Revelation 1:1

The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John.

Revelation 2:1

Unto the angel of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks.

Revelation 2:8

And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive.

Revelation 2:12

And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write; These things saith he which hath the sharp sword with two edges.

Revelation 2:18

And unto the angel of the church in Thyatira write; These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet are like fine brass.

Revelation 3:1

And unto the angel of the church in Sardis write; These things saith he that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars; I know thy works, that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead.

Revelation 3:7

And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth.

Revelation 3:14

And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God.

Revelation 5:2

And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof?

Revelation 7:2

And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea.

Revelation 8:3

And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne.

Revelation 8:5

And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast it into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake.

Revelation 8:7

The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.

Revelation 8:8

And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood.

Revelation 8:10

And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters.

Revelation 8:12

And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.

Revelation 8:13

And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound!

Revelation 9:1

And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit.

Revelation 9:11

And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.

Revelation 9:13

And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God,

Revelation 9:14

Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates.

Revelation 10:1

And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire.

Revelation 10:5

And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven.

Revelation 10:7

But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished, as he hath declared to his servants the prophets.

Revelation 10:8

And the voice which I heard from heaven spake unto me again, and said, Go and take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth.

Revelation 10:9

And I went unto the angel, and said unto him, Give me the little book. And he said unto me, Take it, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey.

Revelation 11:1

And there was given me a reed like unto a rod: and the angel stood, saying, Rise, and measure the temple of God, and the altar, and them that worship therein.

Revelation 11:15

And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

Revelation 14:6

And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people.

Revelation 14:8

And there followed another angel, saying, Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication.

Revelation 14:9

And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand.

Revelation 14:15

And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe.

Revelation 14:17

And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle.

Revelation 14:18

And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe.

Revelation 14:19

And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God.

Revelation 16:2

And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshipped his image.

Revelation 16:3

And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man: and every living soul died in the sea.

Revelation 16:4

And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became blood.

Revelation 16:5

And I heard the angel of the waters say, Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus.

Revelation 16:8

And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire.

Revelation 16:10

And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain.

Revelation 16:12

And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared.

Revelation 16:17

And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done.

Revelation 17:7

And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns.

Revelation 18:1

And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory.

Revelation 18:21

And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying, Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all.

Revelation 19:17

And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God.

Revelation 20:1

And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand.

Revelation 21:17

And he measured the wall thereof, an hundred and forty and four cubits, according to the measure of a man, that is, of the angel.

Revelation 22:6

And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done.

Revelation 22:8

And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things.

Revelation 22:16

I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.

REFERENCES TO MICHAEL

Daniel 10:13

But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.

Daniel 10:21

But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince.

Daniel 12:1

And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.

Jude 9

Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.

Revelation 12:7-8

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven.

REFERENCES TO GABRIEL

Daniel 8:16

And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision.

Daniel 9:21-22

Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding.

Luke 1:19-20

And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent to speak unto thee, and to shew thee these glad tidings. And, behold, thou shalt be dumb, and not able to speak, until the day that these things shall be performed, because thou believest not my words, which shall be fulfilled in their season.

Luke 1:26-38

And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth, To a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin's name was Mary. And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women. And when she saw him, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be.

And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end. Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man? And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be

born of thee shall be called the Son of God. And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she hath also conceived a son in her old age: and this is the sixth month with her, who was called barren. For with God nothing shall be impossible. And Mary said, Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. And the angel departed from her.

REFERENCES TO CHERUB (Cherubim plural)

Exodus 25:19

And make one cherub on the one end, and the other cherub on the other end: even of the mercy seat shall ye make the cherubims on the two ends thereof.

Exodus 37:8

One cherub on the end on this side, and another cherub on the other end on that side: out of the mercy seat made he the cherubims on the two ends thereof.

2 Samuel 22:11

And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: and he was seen upon the wings of the wind.

1 Kings 6:24

And five cubits was the one wing of the cherub, and five cubits the other wing of the cherub: from the uttermost part of the one wing unto the uttermost part of the other were ten cubits.

1 Kings 6:25

And the other cherub was ten cubits: both the cherubims were of one measure and one size.

1 Kings 6:26

The height of the one cherub was ten cubits, and so was it of the other cherub.

1 Kings 6:27

And he set the cherubims within the inner house: and they stretched forth the wings of the cherubims, so that the wing of the one touched the one wall, and the wing of the other cherub touched the other wall; and their wings touched one another in the midst of the house.

2 Chronicles 3:11

And the wings of the cherubims were twenty cubits long: one wing of the one cherub was five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house: and the other wing was likewise five cubits, reaching to the wing of the other cherub.

2 Chronicles 3:12

And one wing of the other cherub was five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house: and the other wing was five cubits also, joining to the wing of the other cherub.

Psalms 18:10

And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: yea, he did fly upon the wings of the wind.

Ezekiel 9:3

And the glory of the God of Israel was gone up from the cherub, whereupon he was, to the threshold of the house. And he called to the man clothed with linen, which had the writer's inkhorn by his side;

Ezekiel 10:2

And he spake unto the man clothed with linen, and said, Go in between the wheels, even under the cherub, and fill thine hand with coals of fire from between the cherubims, and scatter them over the city. And he went in in my sight.

Ezekiel 10:4

Then the glory of the Lord went up from the cherub, and stood over the threshold of the house; and the house was filled with the cloud, and the court was full of the brightness of the Lord's glory.

Ezekiel 10:7

And one cherub stretched forth his hand from between the cherubims unto the fire that was between the cherubims, and took thereof, and put it into the hands of him that was clothed with linen: who took it, and went out.

Ezekiel 10:9

And when I looked, behold the four wheels by the cherubims, one wheel by one cherub, and another wheel by another cherub: and the appearance of the wheels was as the colour of a beryl stone.

Ezekiel 10:14

And every one had four faces: the first face was the face of a cherub, and the second face was the face of a man, and the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle.

Ezekiel 28:14

Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire.

Ezekiel 28:16

By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire.

Ezekiel 41:18

And it was made with cherubims and palm trees, so that a palm tree was between a cherub and a cherub; and every cherub had two faces.

REFERENCES TO SERAPHIM

Isaiah 6:1–8

1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

2 Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

5 Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts.

6 Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar:

7 And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me.

REFERENCES TO SONS OF GOD (Referring to angels)

Genesis 6:2

That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose.

Genesis 6:4

There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown.

Job 1:6

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them.

Job 2:1

Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the Lord.

Job 38:7

When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?

ANSWERS TO SELF-TESTS

CHAPTER ONE:

1. By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. (Psalm 33:6)
2. The title "angel" means messenger. So by definition, an angel is a messenger. The good angels carry out the commands of God, while evil angels carry out Satan's deceitful and evil commands.
3. Check your answers with the references listed regarding the creation of angels.
4. Their major purposes are the work and worship of God.
5. Heaven.
6. Compare your summaries with the discussion under "The Number Of Angels."
7. The spheres of activity of angels are in Heaven and on earth.
8. The spiritual division of angels is holy and elect or evil and unclean. The division occurred when Lucifer rebelled and took 1/3 of the angels with him.

CHAPTER TWO:

1. And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.
(2 Corinthians 11:14)
2. Compare your summaries of misconceptions with the discussion under the subheadings in this chapter.
3. The guidelines to dispel spiritual deception:
 - Does the angel perform acts contrary to the Bible?
 - Does the angel draw attention to himself or to God?
 - Does the message from the angel appeal to your pride and flatter you?
 - Does the angel claim to be the spirit of a dead friend, family member, or ancestor?
 - Does the angel accuse you and cause shame?
 - Is the message from the angel unscriptural and anti-Christ?
4. The Biblical standard by which to judge whether or not an angel is truly from God is analyzing what the angel has to say about Jesus Christ: *"This is how you can recognize the Spirit of God: Every spirit that acknowledges that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God"* (1 John 4:2).

CHAPTER THREE:

1. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.
(1 Corinthians 2:4)
2. Compare your summaries to the discussion under the subheading “Characteristics Of Angels.”
3. Compare your list and summary to the discussion under “Titles Of Angels” in this chapter.

CHAPTER FOUR:

1. For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him. (Colossians 1:16)
2. The organization of the invisible world is described in terms of thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers. We are not given details of this structure. The emphasis is that God created all things in Heaven and on earth and that He is sovereign over these divisions. Satan has organized his forces into:
 - Principalities: A principality is the territory or jurisdiction of a prince. Satan has placed a prince over each principality. This is how Satan influences governments and nations.
 - Powers and rulers of darkness of this world: Two categories of demons at work in the social, political, and cultural systems of the world.
 - Spiritual wickedness in high places: This is how Satan works in the religious structures of the world.
3. Compare your discussion to the summary under Categories Of Angels.
4.

-Angels of the seven churches:	Revelation 1:20
-Four angels who control the winds:	Revelation 1:7
-Seven angels who stand before God:	Revelation 8:2
-Seven angels who administer the seven last plagues:	Revelation 15:1,7
-The angel of the abyss:	Revelation 9:11
-The angel over the fire:	Revelation 14:18
-The angel over the waters:	Revelation 16:5
5. Michael and Gabriel.

CHAPTER FIVE:

1. For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward; How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him. (Hebrews 2:2-3)
2. Compare your discussion to the subheadings in this chapter on the ministries of angels in the Old Testament.

CHAPTER SIX:

1. He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God (Daniel 3:25).
2. The names of the Angel of the Lord include The Angel of the Lord, The Angel of His Presence, The Angel of Jehovah, The Angel of the Covenant and Captain of the Lord's hosts.
3. Compare your summary to the discussion under the heading "The Trinity Of God."
4. Compare your discussion to the discussion under the heading "Appearances Of The Angel Of The Lord."
5. Compare your summary to the discussion under the heading "The Ministries Of The Angel Of the Lord."
6. First, it reveals that Jesus existed before His earthly ministry as recorded in the New Testament. His existence and ministry did not start at birth (John 1:2; 8:58; 17:5,24).

Second, it assures that there was forgiveness of sins in Old Testament times (Isaiah 63:9). They were saved by looking forward to the cross, their belief being expressed each time they sacrificed. We are saved by looking back on the final sacrifice of Jesus Christ at the cross.

Third, the closing message of the Old Testament which references the Angel of the Covenant, our Lord Jesus Christ, predicts His New Testament coming (Malachi 3:1).

Fourth, by understanding the ministry of the Angel of the Lord you can better understand the ministry of Jesus to you as a Believer. As He ministered to those in Old Testament times, so He will minister to you.

CHAPTER SEVEN:

1. And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him. (Mark 1:13)
2. Compare your summary to the discussion under the heading “The Ministry Of Angels To Jesus.”
3. Compare your summary to the discussion under the heading “The Teachings Of Jesus About Angels.”

CHAPTER EIGHT:

1. For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve, Saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Caesar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee. Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer: for I believe God, that it shall be even as it was told me. (Acts 27:23-25)
2. Compare your answers to the subheadings in this chapter regarding the ministry of angels in the book of Acts.

CHAPTER NINE:

1. And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory. (1 Timothy 3:16)
2. Compare your answers to the subheadings in this chapter regarding angels in the Epistles.
3. Compare your answer to the scriptures listed and the discussion about the position of angels in relation to Christ.

CHAPTER TEN:

1. The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John: Who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw. (Revelation 2:1-2)
2. The book of Revelation was written by the Apostle John under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit. Jesus sent his own personal angel to interpret the vision given to John to reveal the events that were to occur in the end-times (Revelation 1:1-2).

3. Compare your answers to the discussion in this chapter on “The Present Ministry Of Angels.”
4. Compare your answers to the discussion in this chapter on “The Future Ministry Of Angels.”
5. The last recorded acts of angels in the book of Revelation:
 - Angels presented the Bride of Christ.
 - Angels showed the New Jerusalem.
 - Angels revealed the throne of God and the Lamb.
 - Angels confirmed the validity of the Revelation.
 - Angels confirmed that Jesus Christ would return.

CHAPTER ELEVEN:

1. After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen. (Revelation 7:9-12)
2. The New Testament Greek word most often translated “worship” means “to fall down before” or “bow down before.” Worship is an attitude of submission, awe, and reverence to God. Worship is an expression of praise and gratitude from the depths of your heart for who God is.
3. Worshipping in spirit involves being born-again with the Holy Spirit resident within and centering your heart, soul, and spirit on the Lord. Worshipping in truth is a positive response to the truths of Scripture.
4. Compare your summaries with the Scriptures provided.
5. There are four major truths evident in how angels worship that are applicable to our own worship of God: The focus, fear, frequency, and freedom of their worship. Compare your answer to the discussion under the heading “Learning From The Angels.”

CHAPTER TWELVE:

1. Are not the angels all ministering spirits (servants) sent out in the service [of God for the assistance] of those who are to inherit salvation? (Hebrews 1:14)

2. Compare your summaries to the discussion under the heading “Ministering To God’s People.”

CHAPTER THIRTEEN:

1. For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. (Psalm 91:11-12)
2. A guardian angel is one that is assigned to protect and guide a particular person, group, kingdom, or country. A guardian angel is not your dead relative watching over you. A guardian angel is one of many angels created by God, dispatched at His will, and given specific assignments.
3. Jesus said the angels of little children always behold the face of the Father in heaven (Matthew 18:10). When Believers were praying for Peter’s release from prison, they thought his angel had arrived at the front door instead of Peter himself (Acts 12:13-15).
4. Compare your summary to the discussion under the heading “Supporting Evidence.”
5. It seems evident that there is a point where an angel will withdraw protection if a person indulges in sin and turns from God. Examples: Children of Israel and Lot’s wife. It also is evident that deliverance from tragedies may have to do with a Believer’s mission. Peter was delivered from prison by an angel because his ministry was just beginning. John the Baptist was not delivered, as his ministry was concluding. Since we are not given a specific answer regarding guardian angels in times of tragedies, this is one of the secret things that must be left with the Lord (Deuteronomy 29:29).

CHAPTER FOURTEEN:

1. *...Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them.*
(2 Kings 6:16)
2. The natural world is that which can be seen, felt, touched, heard, or tasted. It is tangible and visible. The country, nation, city, or village in which you live is part of the natural world. You are a resident in a natural kingdom located on one of the visible continents of the world. The spiritual world is one you cannot see it with your physical eyes but which is just as real.
3. According to 2 Corinthians 2:1, spiritual warfare must be understood with a spiritual mind because the natural man cannot understand spiritual things because they are spiritually discerned.
4. Spiritual warfare is not a natural battle between flesh and blood. It is not a battle of man against man. It is not a visible battle. It is an invisible struggle in the spirit world. It is a battle within and around man. It is not a visible war because spirits are involved and a

spirit does not have flesh and bones (Luke 24:39).

5. The multidimensional aspect of spiritual warfare means it is fought in different dimensions. It is...
 - A social battle between the Believer and the world: John 15:18-27.
 - A personal battle between the flesh and the spirit: Galatians 5:16-26.
 - A supernatural battle between Believers and evil spiritual powers: Ephesians 6:10-27.
6. The invisible war against man started with the first temptation in the garden of Eden (Genesis chapter 3). Satan caused Adam and Eve to sin. This resulted in all men inheriting the basic sin nature and committing individual acts of sin due to this nature (Romans 5:12). It also resulted in the invisible war between man and the forces of evil (Genesis 3:15). Because of sin, man was separated from God and condemned to death. But God loved man so much that He made a special plan to save him from sin (John 3:16-17). Through belief in Jesus, confession of and repentance from sin, men and women can be released from the power of the enemy. The death and resurrection of Jesus not only resulted in salvation from sin. It also defeated the enemy, Satan (1 John 3:8). Following any war there are always pockets of enemy resistance, rebellious troops that will not give up until forced to do so. Although Jesus defeated Satan, we are living in territory which is still occupied by enemy resistance forces against whom we battle.
7. Compare your summaries to the discussion under the heading “Warring Angels” in this chapter.
8. Compare your answer to the discussion under the heading “Surrounded By Evil” in this chapter.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN:

1. In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them. (Isaiah 63:9-10)
2. Compare your answer to the discussion under the heading “Activating The Angels.”
3. Compare your answer to the discussion under the heading under “Hindering The Angels.”